SYNTAX OF MODERN ARABIC PROSE

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE

[VOLUME THREE]

by Vicente Cantarino

INDIANA UNIVERSITY PRESS
BLOOMINGTON/LONDON
## CONTENTS

**Abbreviations** ix

191 — The Compound Sentence 2

XVI COORDINATE CLAUSES

192 — Asyndetical 7

193 — Syntactical 11
  194 — Conjunctive Conjunctions 11
  195 — و 11
  196 — في 20
  197 — ل 35
  198 — Adversative Constructions 39
  199 — لا 40
  200 — لا 43
  201 — لا 46
  202 — Disjunctive Conjunctions 48
  203 — لا 49
  204 — لا 50
  205 — لا 53

206 — Elliptical Coordinate Sentences 54
CONTENTS

XVII SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

207 — Subordinate Clauses 63
208 — Noun Clauses 64
209 — The Asyndetical Noun Clause 64
210 — The Asyndetical Noun Clause after a Preposition 77
211 — َنَّ َنَّ 78
212 — َنَا َنَا 80
213 — َنُنَا َنُنَا 84
214 — Indirect Questions 97
215 — Syndetical Noun Clauses 105
216 — General Remarks on the Use ofَنَا andَنُنَا 106
217 — َنَا َنَا 107
218 — َنَا 116
219 — Coordinated Noun Clauses 122
220 — The Function of a Noun Clause 130
221 — Syndetical Noun Clauses after Prepositions 138
222 — Ellipsis of the Preposition 145

Adjectival Clauses 147
223 — The Asyndetical Relative Clause 148
224 — The Resumptive Personal Pronoun 154
225 — Omission of the Resumptive Pronoun 158
226 — Attraction of the Antecedent on the Relative Clause 160
227 — Pronominal Use of the Asyndetical Relative Clause 161
228 — The Syndetical Relative Clause 162

230 — The Resumptive Personal Pronoun 165
231 — Pronominal Use of the Relative Adjective 168
232 — The Pronominal Clause 170
233 — َمُن َمُن 173
234 — َكِ َكِ 177
235 — َمُن‌ َمُن‌ 179
236 — The Resumptive Personal Pronoun 182
237 — Function of the Pronominal Relative Clause 186
238 — Formular Expressions with َلَا 192
239 — َلَا as Indefinite Particle 207
240 — Paronomasia in a Pronominal Relative Clause 209
241 — Adverbial Uses of َلَا 210
242 — The Adverbial Relative Clause Functioning as a Nominative 211
243 — The Adverbial Relative Clause Functioning as a Genitive 218
244 — The Adverbial Relative Clause Functioning as an Accusative 229
245 — The Adverbial َلَا after Prepositions 231

246 — Adverbial Clauses 242
247 — Circumstantial Clauses 242
248 — The Asyndetical Circumstantial Clause 244
249 — Verbs in an Auxiliary Function 255
250 — Word Order with Auxiliary Verbs 263
251 — The Syndetical Circumstantial Clause 266
### CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>252</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>254</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256</td>
<td>— The Particle ٌٍّّٓ and its Derivatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257</td>
<td>Conditional Clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>258</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261</td>
<td>— The Concessive Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>262</td>
<td>— Incomplete Conditional Clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>263</td>
<td>— Exceptional Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>264</td>
<td>— The Indefinite-Conditional Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>265</td>
<td>Nullification of a Subordinate's Influence on its Main Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266</td>
<td>— Use of the Particle ف</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>267</td>
<td>— The Omission of ق</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>268</td>
<td>— Use of the Particle ج</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### XVIII PARENTHETICAL CONSTRUCTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>269</td>
<td>Parenthetical Constructions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### XIX EXPANDED COMPOUNDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>270</td>
<td>Expanded Compounds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>389</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ABBREVIATIONS

- **Hai. sir.** Muḥammad Husain Haikal, Ḥayāt Muḥammad, Cairo 1952, 5th edition.
- **Hak. ahl.** Taufīq al-Ḥakīm, Aḥl al-kaḥf, no year, 5th edition.
- **Hak. sheh.** Shehrazād, Cairo 1934.
- **Hak. sul.** Sulaimān al-Ḥakīm, Cairo, no year, 2nd edition (?).
- **Hak. yaum.** Yawmīyyāt naʿīb fī l-aryāf, Cairo, no year.
- **Hus. ayy.** Ṭāḥa Ḥusain, Al-aqyām, Cairo, 1st vol. no year, 2nd vol. 1958.
- **Hus. 'ala.** 'Alā hāmiḥ al-ṣīrā, Cairo, 1st vol. 1952, 2nd vol. 1953, 3rd vol. 1951.
- **Mah qah.** Naṣīr Maḥfūz, Al-Qāhirah l-jadīda, Cairo 1958, 3rd edition (?).
- **Mah. zug.** Buqāʿ al-midaq, Cairo 1961 4th edition (?).
ABBREVIATIONS

Nu'. liq. Lāqīf, Beirut 1952.
...(Br.)..... e.g. Mand. (Br.) 17,5, Muḥammad Mandūr, page 17, line 5 in Advanced Arabic Readers I by W. M. Brinner and M. A. Khouri, University of California at Berkeley, 1961.
...(Br.II)..... 2nd vol. of Brinner's Reader, 1962.
...(Zy)..... e.g. Tai. (Zy.) 34,25, Maḥmūd Tāmūr selection 34, paragraph 25 in A Reader in Modern Literary Arabic by Farhat J. Ziadeh, Princeton University, 1964.

Names of authors in both readers are abbreviated as follows:

Af. Michel Aflaq
al-Hus. Isḥāq Mūsā al-Ḥusainī
Amin Aḥmed Amin
Q. Amin Qāsim Amin
'Aqq. 'Abbās Maḥmūd al-'Aqqād
'A. Raf. 'Abbās al-Raḥmān al-Rāfī 'I
'Aww Tawfīq Yusuf 'Awwād
Ayy. Dhū al-Nūn Ayyūb
Bakd. Khalīd Bākḍāsh
Batt. Rufa'il Batṭī
Din Khalīl Taqīy al-Dīn
S. Din Sa'id Taqīy al-Dīn
Far. Nabīn Amin Fāris
Fur. Anīs Puraiṭa
Ghur. Roqoq Ghuraybī
Gibr. Gibrān Khalīl Gibrān

ABBREVIATIONS

Hai. Muḥammad Ḥusain Haikal
Hak. Taufīq al-Ḥakīm
Hind. Khalīl al-Hindawī
Hus. Ṭaha Mūsā
Idr. Suhalī Idrīs
Jabr. Jābrā Ḥibrīn Jābrā
Kam. Maḥmūd Kāmil
Kay. Sāmī al-Kayyālī
Khal. Muḥammad Khalaf Allāh
Khalīd Muḥammad Khalīd
Kurd Muḥammad Kurd 'Alī
Mand. Muḥammad Mandūr
Manf. Muṣṭafā Luṭfī al-Manfalūṭī
Maz. Ibrāhīm 'Abd al-Qādir al-Māzīnī
Mub. Ṭakī Mubārak
Musa Sālāma Mūsā
Nū'. Mikhlīl Nu'aima
Qal. Suhaīr al-Qalamawī
Qud. Ṭhān 'Abd al-Quddūs
Qutb Sayyid Qutb
Raih. Amīn al-Raḥmānī
Razz. Munīf al-Razzāz
Sa'. Amīn al-Sa'id
Sak. Khalīl al-Sakānīn
Sat. Ṭāṣī al-Ḥusārī
Sib. Yusuf al-Sībā'I
Tai. Maḥmūd Tāmūr
Zayy. Aḥmad Ḥasan al-Zayyāt
Zur. Qūṣṭānūzin Zurayq

Books frequently quoted

Ashmāwī Ibn al-Ṭāhīr al-Ashmawī, taḥṣīl 'alā matnī 1-ṭaḥṣīl waṣīla fi ṣawā'id al-'arabīyya, Cairo, 1341 (Hegira).

1 Bibliographical information on the books which are less often mentioned is given at the point of quotation.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bravman</td>
<td>Studies in Arabic and General Syntax</td>
<td>Cairo, 1953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farhat, Bah.</td>
<td>Germanus Farhat, Kitāb baḥth al-maṭālīb</td>
<td>Beirut, 1882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gwā'īd</td>
<td>Ḥifnī Bey Nāṣif, Kitāb gwāʾīd al-lugha al-ʿarabiya, 2nd ed. Cairo, 1909</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reck. Synt.</td>
<td>H. Reckendorf, Arabische Syntax, Heidelber, 1921</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya'ish</td>
<td>Ya'ish 'All Ibn Ya'ish, Sharh al-Muqaṣṣal</td>
<td>Cairo, no year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZDMG</td>
<td>Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenländischen Gesellschaft</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 191 THE COMPOUND SENTENCE

The main distinction between expanded and compound sentences is that in the former one or more components have been "expanded" through the addition of new grammatical elements which modify the idea stated by the more basic components of the sentence. In the latter, the compound sentence, the new elements used are syntactically sentences in themselves.

The most elementary division to be made between these compounds is based on the mutual relationship of the elements involved. If it is one of equality, then we have a coordination. If some elements are intended as parts which modify or complete others considered as basic, then we have a subordination.

In Arabic, syntactical subordination is thus based on the fact that a given statement, a sentence, may be used within another more elaborate statement to function as any nominal part of speech; that is to say, it may assume a role equivalent to that of a substantive, an adjective, a pronoun or even an adverbial modifier.

Therefore, the main distinction to be made between coordination and subordination is seen in that two coordinated sentences, while building one single idea or converging to form a more complex expression, are structurally independent of each other and have only a logical relationship which may or may not be expressed by a conjunction.

It cannot be denied that subordination in Arabic has developed from syntactical coordination, which explains the fact that the language, even in modern times, has not attained the same degree of development in all aspects of syntactical subordination. Some types, such as noun clauses, have been developed rather extensively (see Vol. III, p. 64f); others, such as adverbials, are even today at times difficult to recognize as being subordinated without the help of their logical relationship and, in many cases, are completely equivalent to a syntactical coordination (see Vol. III, p. 242ff.).

In the following chapters we shall try to make a division, not only according to the syntactical function of the subordinate clause within the compound, but also according to the way it is connected to or introduced into the compound. Thus, we shall call asyndetical those that do not have a special conjunction or particle that expresses the syntactical ties. Not all asyndetical constructions, however, are of the same syntactical quality; some, as in the case of sentences functioning as genitives, are very close; connected to the main clause by the presence of a noun in the construct state; others, such as adjectival-relative ones, are apparently equivalent to a juxtaposition.

We consider syntetical those that have a particle which is the exponent of the syntactical relationship between both components. The nature of these subordinating ties is very complex, as we shall later show.

Through the centuries, Arabic has retained very poor in true conjunctions. This lack has been compensated for, especially in the modern language, by the development of expressions of adverbial character that give it the necessary flexibility to express the more complex constructions, thus enabling Arabic to fully reflect modern thought.

This, however, has not changed the situation from the syntactical point of view, as we shall try to indicate in the pertinent sections that follow.

For the abovementioned reasons, we shall not utilize the generally accepted division of compound vs. complex clause to designate coordination or subordination of sentence components.

We shall speak instead of compounds in which a coordination may be included as well as a subordination, the actual nature of the mutual relationship of the components being left to further analysis.
XVI COORDINATE CLAUSES
§ 192 ASYNDEICAL

In Arabic, two or more complete sentences, structurally independent of each other, can be used without any connecting particle to express:

a) independent but complementary statements, as in a description or in the development of an idea:

His marriage was a fake; so was his life and [his] whole world.
Mah. qah. 120,23

He is Hashim's nephew; I brought him from Yathrib.
Hai. sir. 98,18

I am the human heart, [I am] imprisoned in the darkness of man's dictates.
Gibr. II,115,1

But Mahjub did not hear a thing; he was getting dressed in a hurry.
Mah. qah. 171,3

Mohammed spent a tranquil and peaceful night; the fever had abated.
Hai. sir. 502,16

2. The use of قال in the following example can hardly be considered as an independent sentence but rather a graphic way to introduce direct speech:

He once told me....
Rath. mul. 29,14
b) an appositive statement in order to explain or to determine the preceding statement:

Here begins a new page in the life of Mohammed, his married life and his life as a father.
Hai. sir. 122,17

There is another author I dearly love, Anatole France. Musa adab. 177,16

o) the reason for the preceding statement:

He is my brother; he was a prophet and so am I.
Hai. sir. 187,19

Your God is an oppressor; he does not know justice.
Zayy. (Br.II) 155,27

He is a thief; he broke into the convent at night.
Gibr. I,129,18

d) a result or a logical consequence:

That is my place; I shall do in it as I please.
Raf. wah. 6,5

e) an emphatic repetition or modification:

It was empty; there was not a single student there.
Hai. (Sy.) 14,4

They were extremely greedy; they never could be satisfied.
Amin zuh. 10,4

God is the Living One; He never dies!
Hak. (Br.) 43,14

f) an explanation of the preceding statement:

How fine is their taste! The color of their clothing is like the color of the sky.
Hak. (Sy.) 11,14

The staircase was average; it was not very wide or very narrow.
Hus. ayy. II,5,4

His food was dry; he did not sit at the table.
Hus. ayy. I,23,12

He was a genuine Iraqi; he knew how the impossible could become easy.
Ayy. (Br.) 32,4

g) after a command, the reason for the command:

Let him play, he is [so] young! Hus. ayy. I,35,14
5) also after certain imperatives or interjunctional commands:

Come then, let's return the monastery's spacious lands to the needy villagers. Gibr. I, 166, 16
Come on, let's go now. Gibr. I, 144, 9

Usually the verb in the sentence that follows an imperative will be in the short form of the imperfect—the jussive—as an expression of emphasis (see Vol. I, § 26)³:

Ask him, he will tell you. Hus. ayy. I, 151, 16
Compare him with his mother, and you will find.... Q. Amin (Zy.) 5, 35
Deny schools to the European and he will be most ignorant. Hâk. (Zy.) 11, 37
Look in the theology books and you will find that they affirm... Hai. sir. I, 5

3. Arab grammarians and Western scholars also frequently consider these constructions as conditional.

Although the meaning in some of them could perhaps tolerate such a conditional interpretation, in the majority of cases its real meaning would change if the interpretation were conditional:

If you are ill, ask our Lord Husain and he will bring you a remedy. Mah. zuq. 14, 8
Let me sleep, for my spirit is intoxicated with love. Gibr. II, 215, 3

§ 193 SYNDETICAL

Two or more sentences in syndetical construction are complete and structurally independent of each other. Their mutual relationship is expressed by a conjunction which unites them without changing the structural independence of the individual sentences. The nature of this relationship and the meaning of the compound will vary according to the conjunction used.

§ 194 CONJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS

The function of the conjunctive conjunctions consists in bringing together independent sentences that are understood as necessary parts in the complete exposition of an idea. It simply indicates, through its connective role, the actual validity of all the parts connected. The semantic relationship between the connected sentences is only given through their logical relation to each other.

§ 195 וב is the most generally used conjunctive particle. It connects sentences without implying any closer, more logical relationship.
The frequency of its use, as well as the manifold meanings that can be expressed with this conjunction, cannot be reproduced in English. Hence, many of the simplest constructions in Arabic require more elaborate ones in their translation, e.g.,

A \( \text{أ} \) may connect sentences

\( a) \) intended as equally important in the exposition or the narrative:

\[ قالت ذلک واقعت بنى حدثم ؛ طلبت \]
\[ قال وفقة .... \]

\[ Din (ZY) 3,17 \]

\[ He said, laughing.... \]

\[ He interrupted her, shouting.... \]

\[ Manf. shā', 236,16 \]

\[ because I am not looking for a way to get acquainted with him nor do I want him to look for a way. \]

\[ Manf. mag. 4,1 \]

\[ Why be concerned with Arabic unity and [at the same time] neglect Moslem unity? \]

\[ al-Hus. (Br.II) 74,6 \]

\[ لعلما تªصَّم بالوحدة العربية \]
\[ ويجب الوحدة الإسلامية؟ \]

At that time, when she was ten or eleven years of age, Mohammed consummated his marriage with A'isha, Abu Bakr's daughter. She was a gentle, pleasant-looking girl who could converse amiably. Still in her adolescence, she was very playful and gay. Her body, however, had fully developed.

\[ Hāi. sir. 228,6-9 \]

\[ The flow of the newcomers had no end. They were received by young ladies with beautiful dark eyes. Less than half an hour after he had been seated, the number of the invited had grown to such an extent that they were all packed together, both men and women. \]

\[ Mah. qah. 91,17 \]

\[ I am a stranger in this town and also in any other town. \]

\[ Gibr. III,81,9 \]

\[ I have heard and read it and still do not understand. \]

\[ al-Hus. (Br.II) 14,23 \]

\( b) \) happening simultaneously:

\[ إذا لم تكن يأبى التقدم في هذه المدينة وأنا غريب في كل مدينة أخرى \]

\[ أترى حقاً وقلا أو أت؟ \]

\[ أسمع وأقرأ. \]

Thus, \( \text{أ} \) connecting two sentences with the same verb, emphasizes the simultaneous but independent occurrence of an action realized by two different subjects:

\[ Mrs. Warde [al-Hani] and I sat down. \]

\[ Gibr. I,112,14 \]

\[ If they leave him, he will perish and so will they. \]

\[ Raf. wah. III,6,5 \]

\[ or its effect on different objects: \]

\[ يسبي روح محمد وسبي أحمد \]

\[ His people call him Mohammed and also Ahmed. \]

\[ Hus. 'ala. I,199,8 \]

\[ أنت تقتل وتقف؟ \]

\[ Aren't you going to kill me and him? \]

\[ Hāk. sheh. 158,6 \]

\[ كانت أيها كادنت تصرف الاعمام \]
\[ وشرف أهلي .... \]

\[ His mother was, as usual, directing the servant and also his sisters who.... \]

\[ Hus. ayy. I,19,5 \]
Hence, the repetition of the verb is used to express a reciprocal idea:

We loved each other.
Gibr. I, 135, 7

Roxane and I were talking to each other.
Manf. sha'. 188, 6

that they loved each other.
Hak. ahl. 128, 5

We know each other.
Gibr. III, 116, 4

They loved each other.
Manf. sha'. 69, 15

or understood as a natural succession of events:

At night, I kneel before myself and worship myself.
Gibr. III, 14, 4

I surrendered to the wish of her mother, approached the bed, took Baha's hand and called her by her name.
Nu'. liq. 37, 9

Saying this, he rose from his seat and went out to the garden.
Gibr. I, 143, 6

I thanked him and he left.
S. Din (Br.) 61, 4

He left that day and went up to the minaret, took part in the call to prayer, prayed and wanted to go back home.
Hus. ayy. I, 56, 8

Every day they attack and beat me and eat the candy.
Aww. (Br.) 14, 20

A moment later, the Sultan and his escort recited the prayer, [then] drank coffee and departed.
Rah. mul. 45, 6

or

In the morning I damn the sun, at noontide I curse humanity, at eventide, I scoff at nature, and at night I kneel before myself and worship myself.
Gibr. III, 14, 4

Today you are my sweetheart and tomorrow you will be my husband.
Manf. mag. 43, 8

Why don't you accept my invitation and come with me?
Gibr. III, 82, 19

He acknowledged Abu Bakr as Caliph and the people followed him.
Amin duh. III, 4, 10

B Two imperatives are usually connected by the conjunction َوَ لِمَا دَرَكَ وَمَا تَعْمَلَ تَعْمَلٌ when the second, rather than being a new command, is understood as giving the content, reason, or result of the first one:

Come, have a look.
Hak. sheh. 9, 9

Come on, tell me about the beautiful Shehrzade.
Hak. sheh. 7, 12
COORDINATE CLAUSES

C After interrogative sentences, ـ may connect the question with its content:

My brother, how did you dare leave the monastery on such a night?
Gibr. I,160,12

D In addition, after verbs of command and related meaning, the content of the command may be given in a coordinated expression if the action was actually accomplished:

Abu 1-Ala decided to send somebody to Aleppo to buy some for them.
Hus. ayy. I,21,8

E Very frequently, ـ is used to introduce a sentence that should be understood as a parenthetical explanation of the preceding one:

When God gives us this big vessel that is our body,... Hak. sul. 36,11

I was eighteen years of age when destiny led me to Rashid., he was then nearly forty years old.
Gibr. I,113,4

This duty is the zaka [which] is the third of the five pillars....
Zayy. (Br. II) 154,24

Mohammed said to his uncle Abbas, who was one of the wealthiest among the Banu Hashim....
Hai. sir. 139,17

When Abu Talib learned..., he called his nephew. He was then twenty-five years old. Hai. sir. 170,22

For these sources—the Koran foremost— are the first ones that tell us about the life of the Arab Prophet.
Hai. sir. 29,1

(He loved) to accompany the muezzin with the taslim—that is, the summons which....
Hus. ayy. I,56,6

The explanation may be to add or stress a new aspect of the sentence:

He went first, with the others following.
Hus. 'ala. II,40,7

He remained, thinking a long while.
Hus. 'ala. I,3,9

The parenthetical explanation may give the reason for the preceding statement:

...although he was not the oldest among the brothers, since al-Harith was the oldest.
Hai. sir. 114,12

F After certain verbs of general meaning, ـ introduces what is actually the main idea, which should be understood as modified by the preceding verb:
In reply, he said to them [he replied and said to them] .... Gibr. I, 169, 12

Then she continued....
Gibr. I, 115, 15;
Gibr. III, 116, 6

In addition to this, I'd add.... Musa adab. 15, 10

He is generous enough to add.... Kurd. (Zy.) 28, 25

On the inaugural day of the convening of the thirteenth session, the acting president of the Fuad I Arabic Language Academy, my colleague, Dr. Paris Namr Bey, designed to ask me.... Kurd (Zy.) 28, 1

G The basic meaning of the conjunction و, that of simultaneity of two actions, causes its use after certain temporal expressions of duration:

Since the beginning of the world, you have been fighting our gentle power with your coarse weakness. Gibr. III, 48, 5

From the beginning of time, man has been serving himself. Gibr. III, 12, 19

For nineteen centuries, Humanity has been worshipping weakness in the person of Jesus. Gibr. III, 25, 3

H In addition to the above, the connective significance of this conjunction has made common its use to join sentences which are actually very loosely related to preceding statements or situations as, e.g., in questions:

"Are you also asking my opinion on this?" .... "Why not?" Hak. sul. 43, 6

and at the beginning of chapters, with the natural exception of the first one of the book, when the division into chapters is not intended as a complete break in the narrative; e.g., Nagib Mahfuz uses this conjunction at the beginning of thirty-five chapters out of forty-six in his book al-Qahirah al-Jadida.

I The two sentences connected by the conjunction و may be, and in fact frequently are, in an adversative relationship, such as "but," "yet," especially when one of the statements is negative:

For she [woman] does not live through herself and for herself, but only through and for her man.
Q. Amin (Sy.) 5, 30

as if in the city, yet out of it.
Nu'. lig. 35, 5

I can hear your tormented voice, but I cannot see you. Hak. ahl. 9, 7

I have knocked at your door a thousand times, but nobody opened it for me. Gibr. III, 82, 20

but it is also used with two affirmative statements:

You don't know today, but you will tomorrow.
Manf. mag. 46, 3

thinking that Stephen was with him, yet he was [too] busy to pay any attention to him. Manf. mag. 17, 13
You are a neighbor, yet you act like a stranger! Mah. zuq. 54,18

My Beloved, yesterday I was alone in the world... but today my soul has awakened and found you standing close to her. Gibr. II, 199,3

Say it, then, but be brief. Hak. sul. 9,10

Hence we derive the fact that ّو is frequently used before the adversative particles and ّلكن (see Vol. II, §113):

ّلكن ّلكن... I am not afraid for myself... but I do fear for you. Gibr. II, 78,19

Note that since the main effect of this conjunction is that of simultaneity, the application of this idea of simultaneity to circumstances accompanying an action introduces the use of ّو to connect the main clause(s) with subordinate ones, e.g., before circumstantial clauses (Vol. III, p. 266), in conditional constructions (see Vol. III, p. 330), and in temporal constructions (see Vol. III, p. 291).

§ 196

ّو is the so-called "particle of classification." It indicates coordination together with the idea of development in the narrative.

The main difference between ّو and the connective particle ّلكن is that the latter only joins equally important sentences, stating their simultaneous validity, but without any attempt at internal arrangement or logical classification; ّو, however, implies an arrangement in the narrative. As a consequence of this, and in order to indicate fully its actual meaning and function, ّو should almost always be translated with the connective conjunction "and" plus any of the English adverbs used to express a similar progression and arrangement in sequence, e.g., "so," "then," "thus," etc.4

The difference between the two conjunctions can be seen in the following examples:

I surrendered to her mother's wish, approached her bed, took Baha's hand, called her name, and it seemed to me I noticed a slight twitch in her eyebrows and also about the corners of her mouth. Nu'. liq. 37,9

He went on talking to her for a while until it was time for her to go back. Then, she took leave and departed. Manf. mag. 24,19

I was as alone as a flower growing under the shadow of towering rocks. Thus, Life did not touch me nor was I aware of it. But today, my soul awakened, saw you by her and stood up in joyful awe. Gibr. II, 199,4

4. It will be of interest to mention here the formular expression ّو ّو ّو ّو, "and that's all and no more" (hence also "only"), in which ّو, as previously mentioned (Vol. I, Section 10), should also be considered as an elliptical nominal sentence used with an adverbial function:

That was not only an effect of Husain al-Rahin's words. Mah. zuq. 46,15

Only two. Mah zuq. 30,11

An historian is not simply a translator. Hai. sir. 39,24
C ٰ implies an internal—and logical—relationship between the two coordinate sentences, e.g.

a) It may refer back to the preceding statement as a necessary premise for the action of the second:

When I take a trip to go to the sea... I feel....
Ref. whb. 1,51,12

I would till the soft soil after the rains.
Sak. (zy.) 13,37

b) It may also unite two sentences that have a causal relationship pointing toward the effect, or fact, and its consequences:

Perhaps she will hear your voice and so wake up.
Nu'. 11q. 37,8

We had arrived at the house, so we stopped our conversation.
Nu'. 11q. 34,17

I was afraid that the matter would become too long, therefore I answered in English.
Maz. (zy.) 1,19

She gnawed at the rope with her teeth so that the body fell to the ground.
Gibr. 1,136,8

Cogito ergo sum.
Mah. qah. 25,16

He believed that his ties with the school and those who were there had been definitely severed, and thus he never would go back again, nor would he again see either the teacher or the monitor, so he loosened his tongue atrociously about the two men.
Hus. ayy. I,63,8

B Since ٰ coordinates independent statements, the sentence it follows may only be introduced by ٰ, contrary to ٰٰ, which also may introduce subordinate noun clauses:

English writers are in touch with life.
Musa adab. 2,1

"Wait, Roxane, I want to talk to you."
Manf. sha' 166,6

Note that the statements coordinated with ٰ may also be subordinated to a preceding one; see below p. 33.

The progression indicated by ٰ may be understood as subsequent in time to the preceding action or situation:

When they were through with eating, they departed and he slept where he was.
Hus. ayy. I,90,6

He went to the Emperor of Byzantium and asked him for help against Du Nuwas.
Hai. sir. 75,15

It may also imply a change of subject:

Another [priest] called the Superior and he came hurriedly.
Gibr. I,170,2

If ٰ is used between two clauses in English, a translation of "and" or "but" may best express the meaning; the two clauses may be treated as separate ideas.

If ٰ is used between clauses, the English translation should render the second clause as the subject of the verb of the first; the two clauses are in a parallel construction.

When I return from the land of the Mayans, I will bring you a gift.
Kh. sect. 4,14

If ٰ is used after a clause, the English translation should render the second clause as the subject of the verb of the first;

and you will see in my heart my love for my book.
Hus. ayy. I,46,8
I have asked for bread in the name of love, but humanity did not heed. So now I shall ask for it in the name of evil.
Gibr. II, 164,18

He could not avoid greeting him, so he did.
Manf. mag. 11,10

I thought she had heard me, so I called her a second and a third time.
Nu'. liq. 37,11

But he says what the ignorant cannot understand, so they think he is a liar.
Manf. sha'. 56,3

After a question, the sentence introduced by frequently expresses the reason for the question:

Is he so innocent of such wrongdoings that he can condemn the killer to death and the thief to be hanged?
Gibr. I, 132,16

What have women done, Oh Lord, to merit your anger?
Gibr. II, 52,2

Note the following:

Couldn't I help you by weeping with you?
Hak. sul. 138,10

do) The sentence following the conjunction may also express the reason for or the cause of a preceding statement:

He is the sustainer of life, for he is the one who provides the cities with sustenance.
Sak. (Zy.) 13,12

He felt sympathetic toward the lot of the poor, for he had been raised in poverty.
Amin duh. 409,11

I praise God, for I have found my friend.
Manf. (Zy.) 30,16

How beautiful life is here, my Beloved, for it is like a poet's heart, full of light and gentleness.
Gibr. II, 206,13

But that did not bother him, for he had often walked barefooted.
Hus. ayy. 58,1

d) After an imperative, or an interjectional expression, it gives the reason for the command:

Come on, my sons, to the meal, for food awaits us.
Gibr. II, 29,1

Kiss me, for I am her brother.
Manf. sha'. 132,14

Look at his clothes; they are similar to the habit of the monks.
Gibr. I, 158,16

Come, I'll show you the secret of these people.
Gibr. I, 118,16
COORDINATE CLAUSES

Come to me, my friend.
I want....
Gibr. II, 140, 4
Let me sleep for my spirit is intoxicated with love.
Gibr. II, 215, 3

After verbs of command, the command's content may be given as a coordinate sentence introduced by ﻓﺈن, which expresses the command as having been executed.

فِئينَ قَامَتْ ﻟِمَا أدْعَيْتُ ﻟَهُمْ ﺑِالْعِلْمِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

He told me to perform the ablution for the dawn prayer. Raf. (Zy.) 20,10

سَأَلَتْ ﻟَمَا أَلَدْتَ ﻟَهُمْ ﺑِالْعِلْمِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

Heaven, whose will it was to take my parents away....
Gibr. I, 164, 9

أَرَأَيْتَ ﻓَرَضَيْتَ ﻟَمَا فَرَضَ ﻟَهُمْ ﺑِالْعِلْمِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

He condemned me to be carried and thrown into the sea [He condemned me and they carried and threw me into the sea].
Hak. sul. 10, 9

Compare with the following:

أَرَأَيْتَ ﻓَرَضَيْتَ ﺑِالْقُلُوبِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

She ordered him to precede them with the lantern, which he did.
Manf. sha' 196, 4

e) The sentence after ﻓﺈن may express a mere modality of the preceding statement:

فِئينَ قَامَتْ ﻟِمَا أدْعَيْتُ ﻟَهُمْ ﺑِالْعِلْمِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

while the learned men talked at length. Hus. ayy. I, 79, 6

فِئينَ قَامَتْ ﻟِمَا أدْعَيْتُ ﻟَهُمْ ﺑِالْعِلْمِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

His Lord instructed him very well. H. sir. 132, 14


f) After verbs of general meaning, ﻓﺈن introduces the main idea as modified by the preceding statement:

أَرَأَيْتَ ﻓَرَضَيْتَ ﺑِالْقُلُوبِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

I shall repeat.... (not I shall come back and say.) Musa adab. 21, 12

أَرَأَيْتَ ﻓَرَضَيْتَ ﺑِالْقُلُوبِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

After a little while he went on, saying....
Gibr. I, 164, 9

أَرَأَيْتَ ﻓَرَضَيْتَ ﺑِالْقُلُوبِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

In brief [I shall say in short]....
Maz. (Zy.) 1, 20

أَرَأَيْتَ ﻓَرَضَيْتَ ﺑِالْقُلُوبِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

I closed the subject hastily.
Hak. yaum. 94, 2

أَرَأَيْتَ ﻓَرَضَيْتَ ﺑِالْقُلُوبِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

I took off my old clothing in a hurry.
Hak. ahl. 75, 16

أَرَأَيْتَ ﻓَرَضَيْتَ ﺑِالْقُلُوبِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

But he thought again of his Uncle Ibrahim.
'Awv. (Br.) 17, 24

Note that in this construction, the tense (and mood) of the two connected verbs seems to be necessarily the same:

فِئينَ قَامَتْ ﻟِمَا أدْعَيْتُ ﻟَهُمْ ﺑِالْعِلْمِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

These children suffer longing each time they eat, to eat again.
Ref. wah. I, 90, 3

g) ﻓﺈن, like the conjunction ﻓَيْنَاء, may also connect two sentences that are in an adversative relationship; in such cases, one statement is usually affirmative while the other is negative.

فِئينَ قَامَتْ ﻟِمَا أدْعَيْتُ ﻟَهُمْ ﺑِالْعِلْمِ ﻟَمْ يَسْتَروُنَّ ﺑِإِلَهِٰٓ أَبِيهِ

These children suffer longing each time they eat, to eat again.
Ref. wah. I, 90, 3
The boy heard this but he did not believe nor disbelieve.
Hus. ayy. 1,138,6

I searched for a word to say, but I did not find any. Nu'. liq. 25,12

He remained that way for some time, during which Hādīja sent somebody to look for him in the cave, but he could not be found.
Hai. sir. 134,4

I asked for bread in the name of love, but humanity did not heed.
Gibr. II,164,18

He turned around but did not see anything.
Hai. sir. 133,11

Magdalen did not come down today as usual, but I hope she is well.
Manf. mag. 12,11

but it is also found with two affirmative statements:

Your people went away, but you remained at home.
Hai. sir. 295,19

Three times Khalil had decided to...but Rachel had dissuaded him gently.
Gibr. I,173,1

The holiday in Islam used to be a holy day for meditation and worship, but it has become a day of frivolous thoughts.
Raf. wah. I,35,7

Note the following construction:

أَفْلَمْ يَقْضُوُا أَنْ هَذَا أَنْ ْلَمْ يَقْضُوُا
أَلَّا أَقْضُوُوا مَكَّةَ عَلَى سَاهِدٍ

Why, look at her leaning on his arm. Gibr. I,211,2

Hey you! Don't you know that...
Hak. sul. 16,10

Note also:

بَعْقَ - فِيمَ ِبَعْقَ - مِنْ يَكْبُرُةَ مَثَلِهِ

He began...thinking about what to do with them: whether to kill them or to ask ransom from them.
Hai. sir. 271,12

i) ِلْ can also introduce the jussive of the imperfect, preceded by the particle ِلْ, as an expression of an indirect command.

In this combination, ِلْ always loses its final vowel according to Arabic grammarians (see Vol. I, § 26):

ٍلْ رَفَّ اللّٰهُ إِلَى عَلَمٍ

First, let them bring the two cats!
Raf. wah. I,58,5

ٍلْ لَهَا إِلَى عَلَمٍ

Let's go [back] to our world.
Hak. ahl. 72,10

ٍلْ يَلَبَّيْنَ اللّٰهَ

God's will be done.
Manf. sha'. 162,14
As a consequence of the progression stated by ذا، this conjunction may focus attention on, and even emphasize, the main idea when it occupies a secondary position following another statement. In many of these cases, its function seems to be at times more that of an adverb than of a real conjunction. We see this, for example, when the first sentence in a coordinate construction is intended as a mere statement which introduces or presents circumstances surrounding the sentence following:

When Mary heard these words, her body trembled. 
Gibr. I,177,17

It is the classical language which Islam, at its appearance, found fully developed. 
Khal. (Br.II) 6,4

It may also introduce a sentence after a noun has been mentioned as an anacoluthon (see Vol. II, § 180). This is frequently the case after mention of the subject has been made:

I, I do not know.... 
Raf. wah. I,11,17

I, I was pulling the cart of garbage and dirt. 
Raf. wah. I,346,13

[All beside this] Everything else is a fable everybody knows. 
Hak. shh. 75,7

but also with nouns other than the subject:

"Good afternoon [to you]." 
"[To you, too] Good afternoon." Raf. wah. I,161,12

(On the use of ذا as a correlative particle after ذا, see Vol. III, p. 196.)

The use of ذا to introduce the main part of the sentence is especially frequent after an adverbal modification — whether adverative, temporal, or circumstantial — which is expressed at the beginning of the sentence. In these instances, ذا emphasizes the main aspect of the sentence:

Besides that, Damascus was very far from Khurasan. Amin dhu. I,180,13

Then he goes to school neither to read nor to learn. Hus. ayy. I,61,1

Now, where are we going? Quth (Br.II) 161,3

In spite of that, history repeats itself in the hearts [of men]. 
Raf. wah. I,38,8

However, your father would take any pains.... 
Hus. ayy. I,145,13

For this reason, it surprises me that.... 
Mah. qah. 166,9

Besides that, her heart was still telling her.... 
Mah. qah. 163,1

Accordingly, we had purified ourselves. 
al-Raf. (Zy.) 19,9

In spite of the punishment that he met at home, he wanted things to remain as they were. 
'Aww. (Br.) 12,17

Therefore [From there].... 
al-Raf. (Zy.) 19,2
Note the formular phrase:

Now, then, now to our topic...
Raih. mul. 30,14;
Manf. mag. 10,12

Now, in these pages I shall not do...
Raf. wah. III,4,9

Hence, قَوْمَ is also frequently used to introduce a main clause after statements intended as modifications (temporal, modal, etc.) of the main clause:

But, since we came to the cave, we have only been thinking about...
Hak. ahl. 25,1

As long as the future interests us, then it is of the future that we speak...
Hind. (Zy.) 32,15

that when a writer publishes a book for the people, he expresses his [own] spirit.
Musa adab. 10,6

wishing that the earth would open under him and that he would drop into its bottom forever.
Manf. sha'. 115,3

It is also used after adversative statements:

Although Thuwaiba only nursed him for a few days, he always retained a great affection for her. Hai. al. sir. 109,20

(On the uses of قَوْمَ before the main clause after وإن and in conditional constructions, see Vol. III, p. 361f.)

Since قَوْمَ aids in expressing development in the narrative, as stated above, it may introduce the subordinate clause when this precedes the main clause:

But if you wish, I can make some wonderful loaves for you. Mah. zug. 215,19

It may also coordinate series of clauses:

The year when Dacianus sent me as his delegate to the provinces, I was absent from home four days; when I came back, I had brought some gifts with me for my son that pleased him so very much that he exclaimed...
Hak. ahl. 62,5

قَوْمَ may also coordinate a series of subordinate verbs, e.g. a sequence of verbs following the particle أن:

I am afraid that if I tell you what I know about the condition of your rather at that time, pity and compassion will overwhelm you and you will start crying.
Hus. ayy. I,146,14

قَوْمَ may also be used to introduce an action which is intended as the aim of a previous action, or which is the logical result of an action designed to achieve such a consequence. In this case, قَوْمَ is always followed immediately by a verb in the subjunctive, to which قَوْمَ is prefixed. The meaning of this construction is only to some extent equivalent to an English final clause:

I wish all their pains would migrate from their stomachs to their hearts so that they could find some rest. Manf. sha'. 209,
not to listen to the insinuations of the devil [urging] them to eat from the tree. Hai. sir. 5,4

Why don't you go to the cave to bring these saints as honored guests to the palace? Hak. ahl. 52,11

May God instruct us so that we understand and teach them to become just. Raih. mul. 65,15

Should I cry for them so that Mohammed and his friends learn of it and he rejoices at our misfortune? Hai. sir. 276,14

that they should give every youth a very sharp sword so that they could slay him as a single man... and the Banu Abd al-Manaf would not be able to fight against them all and so they would have to accept the blood money.

Hai. sir. 209,9

to go to the court house every morning to recite a chapter of the AlFiqya to the judge.

Hus. ayy. 1,74,1

Don't show such a sad face, for you will make your brother unhappy.

Hus. ayy. I,140,4

Do divide him up, so that he will not be mine nor anybody else's.

Hak. sul. 29,5

§ 197

emphasizes the sequence existing between two structurally independent statements as an interval, contrary to which stresses the connected series; thus, before a pause or an interval in the narrative is to be understood.

The following examples will clarify the differences among the three coordinate conjunctions (also see the section above on):

Uncle Ali al-Hajj used to affect devoutness and piety and show this to the greatest extreme in affection and mannerism. It began with this "raid," which he would renew toward the end of every night, for he would leave his room, roaring his prayer and praise to God, beating the ground with his stick until he reached the mosque of our Lord Husain. There he would recite his private dawn prayer and attend the public one. Then he would return, mumbling and grumbling, playfully stroking the ground with his stick, and would retire to his room.

Hus. ayy. II,46,8

When they had finished eating, they departed and he slept where he was; later he would wake up and perform his ablutions.

Hus. ayy. I,90,6

At that moment, the bell sounded three times; then the curtain rose and Montfleury appeared on the stage. Manf. sha'.36,14
B As a consequence of its temporal meaning, 
usually implies that the action of the preceding 
sentence has been completed, thus introducing a new 
event or situation:

I bought the book at a high price, then I went 
to a corner of a coffee 
house. 
Maz. (Sy.) 14

that he had been born in 
Lebanon and spent his 
childhood there and a 
part of his youth; then he 
went back to his country 
beyond the sea. 
Na'. kan. 10,15

Give each of them a shovel 
and let them alone. 
Gibr. III, 11,18

that you studied violin 
in Italy and afterward 
returned to your own 
country. 
Nu'. liq. 14,3

This was said in French 
by a man I didn't know; 
later I was told that he 
was Baha's fiancé. 
Nu'. liq. 38,6

C It is frequently used in repetitions to achieve 
an emphatic effect:

He would visit with them 
in the morning, then would 
leave them to say his [Fri 
day] prayers, then visit 
them [again] until the 
afternoon prayer was due, 
when he would leave 
them for a while; afterward, 
he would return [once 
more] to dine in their 
company. 
Hus. ayy. II, 46,2

as a miller's ox which, 
blind-folded, turns and 
turns around thinking 
that.... 
Hak. sheh. 144,16

Since she was completely 
emancipated, she was 
smoking one cigarette 
after another. She would 
get up from the sofa and 
stride back and forth 
in the room, then sit 
down again, cross her 
legs, talking without 
interruption. 
Rah. mul. 19,4

D Thus 
may also introduce a logical sequence; in 
this case, it always has an emphatic character:

I was amazed at myself 
for having surrendered 
so easily to his will; 
furthermore, how 
naive and how stupid of me to 
have promised not to say 
a word about his visit. 
Nu'. liq. 21,4
It is religious, for it does away with the secrets on which religion is based, and then, [because] it also takes the place of religion in determining virtues and human values, it is also philosophical...

Musa adab. 107,16

Thus the sentence following is frequently introduced by إن.

Then the Koreish divided the sides of the Ka`aba into four.

Hai. sir. 125,10

Afterward, she became seriously ill.

Hai. sir. 350,22

It may also connect a series of subordinate clauses with the same effect:

He went on struggling and clinging, appearing and disappearing, moving and [at times] standing still until....

Hus. ayy. I,25,7

He used to order his servant to prepare his meal for him in this room [underground] and then to get out.

Hus. ayy. I,21,6

Since تمّ introduces development in the narrative, it will precede the dependent clause when this precedes the main clause:

Then, when I became sick, they were satisfied with....

Qud. (Br.) 48,4

§ 198 ADVERSATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

A In Arabic, adversative constructions are very frequently coordinated by the conjunction particle ؤً, only the adversative meaning of the two propositions will reveal the actual nature of the construction:

إِذَا يَكُونُ الْعَمَّةُ عَسَمِيًّا لا تَعْلُمُينَ You do not know today, but you will tomorrow.

Manf. mag. 46,3

خَارُذَ وَتَعْمَلُ كَأَلْفِرِبٍ! You are a neighbor, yet you act like a stranger!

Mah. zuq. 54,18

(For additional examples, see Vol. III, p. 19.)

Similarly, two sentences connected by the conjunction ؤً may also have an adversative meaning:

كَ مَجُّ وَاكُلَ حَتَّى يَكُونَ The boy heard it but he did not believe nor disbelieve.

Hus. ayy. I,130,6

(For further examples, see Vol. III, p. 29.)

B Usually, however, an adversative sentence will be introduced by one of the adversative particles. Their function is actually only to present an adversative proposition, without having any connecting value; hence, they are also very frequently preceded by the connective conjunction ؤً.

Arab grammarians, in explaining these two particles, present كَمَّ as the basic form governing a noun in the accusative. From it, كَمَّ has been derived as its "lightened" form. However, they do not go into the details of any differences in their use and meaning.

Reading unvocalized texts, it is not always possible to determine which one is meant. And while only كَمَّ may be used immediately preceding a verb, it cannot be stated that the opposite is the rule, that
is to say, that only لَكَ should be used preceding a noun. Moreover, as we have already seen (see Vol. II, § 109), the noun in the accusative governed by the particle does not necessarily follow immediately after the particle. Very frequently, only the style seems to be the determining reason for using either one.

In general, we may say that لَكَ presents a statement in adversative coordination to one which is preceding. On the other hand, لَكَ stresses the function of one part within a sentence in an adversative relationship to another sentence. Hence, the most important structural differences between both particles are:

a) لَكَ must introduce a complete sentence to which the particle belongs.

b) لَكَ may or may not introduce a complete sentence.

c) لَكَ does not belong structurally to the following sentence, as one can see, for example, when the particle introduces interrogative sentences (see below).

Their meaning, however, seems to be very much the same and, in most cases, the use of either one appears to be determined by the structure of the sentence to follow, which, as we have stated in the introduction above, can at times be based on stylistic reasons only.

§ 199 لَكَ

As we have mentioned, لَكَ emphasizes the adversative function of a noun (which is in the accusative case) in relation to a precedent statement or situation. The noun governed by لَكَ does not have to follow immediately after the particle; however, a verb cannot be placed between the particle and the noun it governs (see Vol. II, § 113):

[And beside this he memorized the whole Koran] But he does not know how he memorized the Koran. Hus. ayy. I, 28, 1

He was convinced that his father was right and that the schoolteacher was lying, but he did not say a word. Hus. ayy. I, 44, 3

A poet never lies, but he says what the ignorant cannot understand so they think he is a liar. Manf. sha'. 56, 3

"They are ambassadors of knowledge not of love... Yet God created them to be ministers of love." Mah. gah. 5, 18

Then there appeared a [type of] literature about travel stories that was almost popular; it really did become popular literature with the Arabian Nights, for example. But the masses remained unenlightened. Musa adab. 6, 12

I don't remember anything of what he said, but I will never forget.... Hak. ahl. 21, 5

What he heard was not news to him; however, it embittered him as though he were hearing it for the first time. Mah. gah. 81, 19

He had always been very curious... but something happened that set bounds to his inquisitiveness. Hus. ayy. I, 19, 1
§ 200

The use of ًَ كَنْ is usually preferred whenever the adversative relationship of the construction is based on the statement of the new situation it introduces rather than on a particular part:

أَنْ أَعْفَ أَنْ يُقَبِّلَهُ مَنْ يَقَرَّرُ مَثَّاً

Then I will excuse you today from reciting, but I want you to make a vow to me. Hus. ayy. I,45,7

During the first Abbasid period, the Persians had great influence, but it did not mean the destruction of Arabic authority. The most important post, as that of Vezir, was in Persian hands, but the Caliph was an Hashimi Arab. Amin duh. I,37,1

We do know where your house is, but we beg of you humbly not to leave us now. Hak. ahl. 65,6

Note the following:

لكنما مَّثَّا ُهُمْ إِنَّ الحُبّ يُحْلِبُ الْقُلُبَ ِذَنَّهَا

but love fills the heart with compassion and tenderness. Manf. mag. 34,14

But [what] grieved Mohammed [was] to return without getting anything from Thaqif. Hai. sir. 435,9

Note also that the accusative introduced by ُهُمْ may be a pronoun of general reference (See Vol. II, § 113 for a discussion of this.)

لكنما مَّثَّا ُهُمْ إِنَّ الحُبّ يُحْلِبُ الْقُلُبَ ِذَنَّهَا

but love fills the heart with compassion and tenderness. Manf. mag. 34,14

He wanted to speak, but he did not know what to say. Mah. gah. 133,7

لكنما مَّثَّا ُهُمْ إِنَّ الحُبّ يُحْلِبُ الْقُلُبَ ِذَنَّهَا

but his uncle, Abu Talib, was, as we have mentioned, poor and had a large family. Hai. sir. 120,14

لكنما مَّثَّا ُهُمْ إِنَّ الحُبّ يُحْلِبُ الْقُلُبَ ِذَنَّهَا

But I did not know that.... Din (Zy.) 3,19

لكنما مَّثَّا ُهُمْ إِنَّ الحُبّ يُحْلِبُ الْقُلُبَ ِذَنَّهَا

But Earth and Life have firm laws which.... Hai. sir. 131,8

لكنما مَّثَّا ُهُمْ إِنَّ الحُبّ يُحْلِبُ الْقُلُبَ ِذَنَّهَا

I am not afraid of the bishop for my own sake, for when one has drowned, one is not afraid of getting wet, but I do fear for you. Gibr. II,78,19

لكنما مَّثَّا ُهُمْ إِنَّ الحُبّ يُحْلِبُ الْقُلُبَ ِذَنَّهَا

أَنْ أَعْفَ أَنْ يُقَبِّلَهُ مَنْ يَقَرَّرُ مَثَّاً

You can do all this, but you cannot.... Manf. sha'. 44,16

لكنما مَّثَّا ُهُمْ إِنَّ الحُبّ يُحْلِبُ الْقُلُبَ ِذَنَّهَا

وَلَكِنَّ سَوْفَ يَجْعَلُونَ

but they will appear. Hak. ahl. 48,14

لكنما مَّثَّا ُهُمْ إِنَّ الحُبّ يُحْلِبُ الْقُلُبَ ِذَنَّهَا

أَنْ أَعْفَ أَنْ يُقَبِّلَهُ مَنْ يَقَرَّرُ مَثَّاً

I did not pay much attention to you at first, but I heard one of you.... Hak. ahl. 12,9
Thus, لَكُنْ is very frequently used before an interrogative sentence to express its adversative relationship to a preceding statement or situation:

لكن هل أستعطا رجلٌ حتى أن أَنْ يَسْتَكِبَسرُ عَلَيْهِ؟

But has any man been able till now to kill a servant? Hak. sheh. 109, 12

"Christ wanted to save both of you."..."Yes, of course. But what kind of salvation is this which separates me from my wife and child?"

Hak. ahl. 17, 12

لَكَنْ ما الأَمْرُ؟

But what is space?

Hai. sir. 131, 7

لَكَنْ أَحْكَمْ أَنْ أَقَلَّمُهُ؟

But is it true that...?

Hai. sir. 174, 10

Note that لَكَنْ may be used, when the situation requires it, before a noun or a nominal sentence:

لَكَنْ هَذَا خَسَسُ ٓـٔ لَكَنْ هَذَا خَسَسُ ٓـٔ

[All this is all right....] But, she, why did she accede to his request?

Hak. ahl. 88, 2

لَكَنْ أَحْكَمْ أَنْ أَكُونَ آتَيْنِي س缓冲ٓاً?

How beautiful people's clothing is now, but more astonishing is that you could accomplish all this in only a few days.

Hak. ahl. 63, 4

لَكَنْ مَعَ مَا ذَكَرْتُ لَكَ ذَلِكَ الْكَانْمُوْسُ

Yet my soul now whispers the names of this Law.

Gibr. II, 193, 11

Unlike لَكَنْ, لَكُنْ may introduce a member of a sentence in adversative relation to one mentioned in the preceding sentence:

In spring, light not only illuminates the eyes, but hearts also, and air not only enters the breast but emotions as well.

Raf. wah. I, 40, 1

لَكَنْ تَجَاعَلْ الْأَمْرُ فِيَّا بِسْتَقُبَهُمْ

Comparison of individuals should not be based on their ancestors or noble descent, but on their actions and virtues.

Amin duh. I, 53, 9

لَكَنْ هَا أَعْتَمَدْ قَصْبُ التَّشْيِعُ كُنْ لَكَنْ عْلَى الْكَيْمِ

There the old man became increasingly angry, but with the schoolteacher, not with the boy.

Hus. ayy. I, 61, 1

As we have seen in the above examples, لَكَنْ actually precedes the sentence without having any ties which might structurally connect the particle with the sentence. Hence, Arabic may use this particle to introduce clauses in adversative relationship to the preceding situation or statement, even in cases when the subordinate precedes the main clause. In this instance, the main clause is introduced by the conjunction أو, at times, also by مَعَ:

لَكَنْ مَعَ مَا ذَاكَرْتُ لَكَ ذَلِكَ الْكَانْمُوْسُ

But since we came to the cave, we haven't thought of anyone else except....

Hak. ahl. 25, 1

لَكَنْ مَعَ مَا ذَاكَرْتُ لَكَ ذَلِكَ الْكَانْمُوْسُ

But as long as literature is at the service of human society, it must be incorporated into its problems.

Musa adab. 4, 8

6. The vowels are indicated in the original printed text.
§ 201

\[ \text{ما \\ بَلْ} \]

as an adversative particle introduces an element which imples (a) the negation of the preceding statement, e.g., "I think, rather, I believe"; (b) after a negative statement, an affirmative counterpart, e.g., "not because...but because"; (c) after an affirmative or negative statement, the range of the meaning may also be amplified: "this, even this." With any of the three meanings (a, b, or c), the particle may introduce a complete sentence — verbal or nominal:

Nobody knew if this family had a head, nor even how it had come down from....
Hus. (Br.) 101,1

An historian is not simply a translator, he also examines the translations in order to ascertain the truth contained therein.
Hai. sir. 39,24

(You are not a woman like others) perhaps you are not [even] a woman.
Hak. sheh. 57,15

My husband was not a thief; he was a farmer who....
Gibr. 1,136,17

from which I have learned that she does not love me; moreover, she never loved me all her life.
Manf. sha'. 238,7

It also introduces any part of a sentence which could be considered as an elliptical construction and in which members common to both have been omitted. Since the particle does not have a governing function, the members it precedes, if nominal, will take the case required by the function they perform. Along with the elements it introduces, \[ \text{ما} \] may either follow the main clause, or be inserted in it parenthetically:

What I think, rather, what I'm sure of, is that this devil loves her.
Nu'. lq. 33,17

Whenever the Prophet becomes a part of Life, or rather an element of its new meaning....
Raf. wah. III,22,3

But his life is a legend, rather [it is] a culmination which excels everything he wrote.
Musa adab. 177,11

against these arbitrary, rather, most destructive, opinions.
Mand. (Br.) 2,14

What he wrote was for the elite, and then only for the upper elite.
Musa (Zy.) 2,16

We shall not find rest in silence and solitude but, rather, in social exchange.
Raf. wah. I,328,3

It has not been just one night...but years!
Hak. ahl. 83,4
Tonight, especially at this moment, it is not fitting for me to fight a smaller number than this! Manf. sha’. 73,10 may also introduce a subordinate clause:

He did not eat much, not because he did not like food, but because he was afraid to...

Hus. ayy. I,23,3

§ 202 DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS

In the same manner in which two or more elements within a sentence may be presented as excluding each other (see Vol. II, § 187), two sentences may also be related disjunctively.

Among the disjunctive constructions, the ones following an interrogative sentence deserve special attention.

Structurally they are simple interrogatives to which another interrogative member has been added. This disjunctive member has the function either of adding another possibility to the question asked—a simple disjunction—or of presenting a statement which excludes the preceding one completely—a dilemma.

The first part of an alternative interrogative construction is usually introduced by one of the interrogative particles used for questions concerning validity,  او or  أَن. The second part is introduced by a disjunctive conjunction, either او or أَم، usually for a simple disjunction, or أَم، generally signifying a dilemma.

In the modern press, an alternative interrogative question is frequently presented as two independent interrogatives separated by independent question marks; this, however, does not seem to influence either the meaning or the structure of the sentence.

§ 203 او or أَم is the general and most frequently used disjunctive conjunction. It can be found in any position when a disjunction is to be expressed; however, it can only be used in affirmative or interrogative sentences. In a series of more than two, the particle is repeated before each part, excluding the first:

If I was to go on a journey to the sea or to the desert, or stop in the mountains, I feel...

Raf. wah. I,51,12

Have any letters come for her or has anybody asked for her?

Manf. mag. 248,7

Then he would go away from where he was and slip in amongst the trees or go up to his room.

Manf. mag. 3,16

When he grew older, he abandoned his trade, or, rather, his trade abandoned him.

Hus. ayy. II,44,16

Abu Hanifa's followers in the city were few, or, rather, he had no followers in the city.

Hus. ayy. I,80,14

Does she know, or doesn't she? Hak. sheh. 21,5

In a negative series of disjunctive sentences, all the members of the disjunction, except the first one, are introduced by او (see Vol. I, § 32). او may also connect a sequence of two or more dependent clauses with a disjunctive meaning; the subordinating element may or may not be repeated in this case:
When the ship [at sea] floats up and down or sways, it is not only because of her [buoyancy]. Ref. wah. I,50,12

These boys loved him in spite of that, or perhaps because of that, or better say that they loved that most in him. Hus. ayy. II,47,3

...for fear that he would upset the cup with his hand or that he would not reach properly for it when it was offered to him. Hus. ayy. I,23,11

...but because he was afraid to be viewed as gluttonous or to have his brothers make fun of him by winking at one another. Hus. ayy. I,23,4

He loathed to have his brothers laugh or his mother cry or his father teach him with sad restraint. Hus. ayy. I,20,9

§ 204

general introduces the second of two interrogative sentences presenting an alternative. Contrary to or , it frequently implies the condition of exclusion in one of the two sentences.

...Were you born a Christian, or did you embrace the religion as an adult? Hak. ahl. 20,5

...Should I tell you to go, or to give it up? Hak. ahl. 30,7

In alternative questions, the verb is mentioned only in the first part of the construction and it may follow the alternative element:

...Were you mourning in the autumn, or rejoicing...? Were you angry in the winter, or dancing...? Were you ailing in the spring, or were you a lover whom distance has emancipated...? Were you dead during the summer days, or were you resting among the fruits and the grapevines...? Gibr. II,207,13

Compare with:

...from the point of view of the one who succeeded Ali, whether an unbeliever or a believer. Amin. Duh. III,6,9

...is also used in indirect alternative questions:

...and I don't know whether I shall see him after today or if this is my last contact with him. Manf. sha'. 153,3

(For more examples, see Vol. III, p. 100.)

A noun clause introduced by may follow after

...Was the devil laughing at him, or did she know nothing of these things? Mah. qah. 72,10
COORDINATE CLAUSES

Does Baha love her fiancé, or did she accept him simply to please you and her mother?
Nu'. liq. 33,1

Were my eyes deceiving me, or was what I saw reality and not fancy?
Nu'. liq. 108,9

(For alternative constructions after سُئِلْتُ ، see Vol. III, p. 103f.)

In disjunctive constructions with أو and alternative constructions with أم, the opposition of parts may not be understood in the usual way as "either-or," but with an effect of amplification in the range of meaning, i.e., "so and even so." The verb is in the perfect tense, with or without preterit meaning.

a) In disjunctive constructions:

(لم تَعْتَلِمْ) قَلْ أو كَرّرُ
(Sp.: ֔mi poot, ֔mi muho)
Hal. (2y.) 14,26

(هم ينطلقون كل حال حسن
أو كل حال شر)

They accept any circumstances, be they good or bad. Raih. mul. 73,16

b) In alternative constructions, the verb كَانَ is frequently used, but only in the first part, and it always follows its predicate. In this case, no interrogative particle is given to introduce the first part of the alternative:

لا أظن أحدا من العرب سوبرادا
كان أو شروكا يستبطعون
(راهبا كان أم سراح)

I do not believe that any Arab, whether monotheist or polytheist, could....

Be he monk or criminal!
Raih. mul. 86,18

poor or rich.

Gibr. II,159,2

Gibr. I,93,18

§ 205

In the small villages news, be it of great importance or little, travels through the peasants with the quickness of thought.

Gibr. I,183,1

Be he Muslim or non-Muslim. Far. (Sy.) 17,16

إما إما

as a particle introducing a disjunctive construction is used before both parts. The second part is always coordinated with the first by the conjunction التو: إما أَيْما بَيْنَ هَذَهِ وَهَذَا إِلَى الأَمَرَاءَ إِمَا يُشْرَكٌ تُرْبَى إِنَّهُ فِي بَلَادٍ أَحَدٍ

Either a day will come when you will understand it all, or everything will remain sealed to you unto eternity.

Nu'. liq. 16,13

authors either living in a prince's palace or adopting in their intellectual life....
Musa adab. 25,15

The second part of the construction may be introduced by the disjunctive particle أو:

ثم أَسْتَمِعْي بِأَيْمَا يَدْيَكِ إِمَا

Then, I will put my life in your hands so you will either let me live or kill me.

Manf. mag. 171,3

إِما إِما frequently establishes a disjunction between two noun clauses introduced by أن or أن: إما أن تَحْتَذِقَ كَلْبَهُ إِما أن

Either you believe it wholly, or you reject it.
Musa adab. 61,13
§ 206 ELLIPTICAL COORDINATE SENTENCES

When two or more sentences in coordination, whether asyndetical or syntactical, conjunctive or disjunctive, contain certain elements in common, these elements are frequently mentioned in the first but omitted in the sentences following.

A In instances of ellipsis in asyndetical constructions, the elliptical sentences can usually be understood as one single sentence with a multiple component. Although there is often no clear distinction between cases of word union and elliptical coordinate sentences, still there are frequent cases in which the ellipsis is still clear enough to justify a division between simple sentences with a multiple component and elliptical coordinate sentences:

- Where are you, my Beautiful One? [Are you] in this small garden watering the flowers...?
  Gibr. II,162,2

B Coordinate sentences in syntactical constructions also often contain one or more elliptical elements:

- It was late in the afternoon, and cold.
  Mah. gah. 73,14

- Mohammed went back, and the Muslims with him.
  Hai. sir. 380,6

- I saw the worker slaving for the businessman, and the businessman for the soldier, and the soldier for the ruler.
  Gibr. III,16,14

- Your Lord is an oppressor, He does not know justice; He is a despot, He does not know equality; He is a tyrant, He does not know liberty.
  Zay. (Br.II) 155,27

- It was completely quiet and oppressively dark, the roads and paths empty and deserted.
  Mah. zug. 18,9

C An elliptical construction is found quite often in coordinated alternative interrogative sentences. In this case, either the first member of the alternative presents a part which will be omitted in the second:

- "Who is the one who will inherit it? You or I?"
  Gibr. II,190,5
Will it be mine, or not? Hak. sul. 30,1

I do not know whether I fell on the planet Earth, or on another one. Manf. sha'. 193,12

and we don't know whether we should believe the letter, or the newspaper. Rah. mul. 63,15

Are you a friend, or a foe? Hak. sul. 78,4

or both will be elliptical, presenting only the alternative member not common

trying to remember where I have seen this before: [Was it] in my childhood, or in a dream, or [even] before I was born? Hak. ahl. 21,9

I don't know how long I have been standing here: whether [it has been] a moment, or an hour. S. Din (Br.) 64,26

from the point of view of the one who succeeded Ali, whether he was an infidel or a believer. Amin duh. III,6,9

For more on direct alternative interrogative sentences, see Vol. III, p. 48f, and also for indirect alternative interrogative sentences, see Vol. III, p. 101.

D An elliptical construction is especially frequent with syntactical or asyndetical coordination of a sentence in which the second member of the coordination is the negative counterpart of the first. In such cases, the negative adverb is usually لا, and it introduces the part or parts of the sentence that are not common to both:

He took part in their games intellectually, but not physically. Hus. ayy. I,24,8

The holiday is the meaning of the day, not the day itself. Raf. wah. I,35,6

The day appeared to be illuminated by the moon, not by the sun. Raf. wah. 40,9

In our village, people did not celebrate a feast either in summer or in autumn. Fur. (2y.) 24,4

to judge by the law of poverty and mercy, not by that of wealth and severity. Raf. wah. I,91,5

Abraham was neither a Jew nor a Christian. Hal. sir. 423,4

Note the following construction:

I do not believe in it or in you. Rah. mul. 106,2

(For more on cases of double negation, see Vol. I, § 30.)

The second member of the coordination may be omitted when it is only a negative repetition of the first statement; in this case, the coordinate construction is indicated by the negative particle لا, which is always mentioned:
Saint Prisca possessed
depth of heart; I do not.
She had an angel's voice
seldom heard; I do not.
She was gentle, pure [in
her] noble life; I am not.
Hak. ahl. 127,15

But if we mean by that..., then, no.
Zur. (Sy.) 18,19;
Zur. (Sy.) 18,22

E Any given part of a sentence may also be omitted
when it can easily be understood from the context or
has already been mentioned:

They were one hundred or
more. Manf. sha'. 90,2

human values which we
have forgotten or almost
forgotten.
Musa adab. 44,9

Its thickness is in some
places a meter or more.
Rainh. mul. 162,8

Note the following case of ellipsis:

Didn't she love Ali Taha?
Indeed, she did.
Mah. qah. 116,8

Therefore, certain elliptical expressions are
often used in a function which is equivalent, at
least in meaning, to that of an adverb or an adjective
(see Vol. II, § 108):

That this man is stupid,
[there is] no doubt [about
it]. Hak. ahl. 83,9

F The common part can, at times, be mentioned
in the second sentence. In this case, the latter
may appear, or even actually develop into, a paren-
thetical elliptical sentence:

They greeted each other
warmly. Mah. qah. 131,5

It doesn't matter to me
whether the first or the
second of these two ac-
counts is correct.
Hai. sir. 126,13

كل ساء ٌ عِنْدَنَا ٌ ٍ وَبَيْدٌ
من حَبَابٍ

ذَٰلِكْ َوَبَيْدٌ ِوَيَقُودُ ِوَيَقُودُ
شَتَا

سَّلَوْنَ ۡوَيُثَرَاءُ ۡمَا ۡمُلُونَا
سَوَاءُ أَصْحَبَتُ ۡأَلْوَى ۡأَمْ أَخْرَى
مَا ۡهَاصَنِّ
XVII SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
§ 207 SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

According to the function of a sentence in a compound, subordination in Arabic can be divided as follows:

A Functioning as a substantive:
   Noun clauses
      (relative)
         a) asyndetical
         b) syndetical

B Functioning as an adjective:
   Adjectival clauses
      (relative)
         a) asyndetical
         b) syndetical

C Functioning as a pronoun:
   Pronominal clauses
      (relative)
      syndetical

D Functioning as an adverb:
   (modal, temporal)
      a) asyndetical
      b) syndetical, with the coordinate conjunction
         a) syndetical, with other adverbial particles

E Conditional and Hypothetical Statements:
   Conditional clauses:
      a) real condition
      b) condition contrary to fact
   Indefinite-conditional clauses:
      a) pronominal
      b) adverbial
§ 208 NOUN CLAUSES

As we have mentioned above in the introduction, any sentence can be used in Arabic in the same way and with the same function as a substantive: as subject, object, in predicative and attributive apposition, and even as an adverbial modification. However, from the standpoint of the genitive relationship of substantives, a sentence cannot be in the construct state; that is to say, it cannot be the first part of the genitive construction. It can, however, function as the second part — that of nouns in the genitive — which is dependent upon a noun in the construct state (without article or nunnation); thus the sentence is considered as being virtually in the genitive case. The noun in the *status constructus* is always to be understood as defined.

We can further distinguish between those sentences having a particle which introduces them and those that are connected to the main clause without any subordinating particle; thence is derived the distinction of asyndetical and syndetical.

§ 209 THE ASYNDETICAL NOUN CLAUSE

Noun clauses without any connecting particle (and thus in an asyndetical construction) can be found in almost any nominal function, although not all with equal frequency.

A As subject, a noun clause is very seldom found and only then, it seems, as subject of a verb in the passive voice:

They say that he was fifteen years old; others also say that he was twenty. Hai. sir. 117, 5

B As predicate, it is equivalent to a predicate in a nominal sentence:

and this truth is that God is the Creator of all existing things. Hai. sir. 132, 9

The [question] is: are they both original works or translations? Amin duh. I, 209, 9

C As an attribute, equivalent to a substantival apposition, it is called *الحَمَّةَ التَّقْوَيَة* by Arab grammarians. This attributive apposition can be

an explanatory apposition, in which the clause expresses the content:

and he made him swear the same oath, that he would listen daily to six parts of the Koran recited by the boy. Hus. ayy. 7, 47, 1

You don't realize the truth; my son died when he was sixty years old. Hak. ahl. 94, 4

indicated to him where the truth was. Hai. sir. 133, 15

Thus reacted the idolaters of the Arabic peninsula; they rapidly embraced Islam and abandoned the worship of Isma'ylis. Hai. sir. 480, 14
or which is frequently found after indirect questions and pronominal relative clauses:

I don't know where he came from, whether he rose from the earth or descended from heaven.
Hus. 'ala. II,199,6

trying to remember where I have seen this before: [was it] in my childhood? or in a dream? or [even] before I was born?
Hak. ahl. 21,9

I remembered what was said in Hijaz and Iraq:
Ibn Sa'ud is an ignorant Badouin, Ibn Sa'ud is uncivil.
Raith. mul. 28,3

b) an emphatic apposition:

Examples of this are numerous, they are countless.
Amin duh. I,22,15

c) a determinative apposition:

A new city, Bagdad, entered into this rivalry.
Amin duh. II,78,6

Of them, two belong to the authors of the mu'allagāt; they are Imru l-Qais and Amar ibn Kalthum.
Dzur. tar. I,134,2

THE ASYNDETICAL NOUN CLAUSE

Don't we know that he will be born an orphan, [that] his father will die when he is still unborn?
Hus. 'ala. II,73,21

d) a restrictive apposition:

The biographers disagree about when wine was prohibited.
Hai. sir. 380,21

but the Arabs could not be satisfied with these great idols, [with] praying and bringing offerings to them.
Hai. sir. 84,1

You have seen how well the Jews received him.
Hai. sir. 224,13

Then he saw how his people afterward were worshipping it.
Hai. sir. 86,1

As an apposition to an adverb or adverbial expression, the appositive noun clause becomes very much like a circumstantial clause and, at times, can also be equivalent to one (see Vol. III, p. 242ff.).

He remained that way for many days, without walking through the garden.
Manf. mag. 23,9

He remained this way a long while, not moving or talking.
Nu. l. lq. 74,15

They remained silent a while without saying a word.
Manf. mag. 30,4
Note the following instance of a circumstantial clause equivalent to an appositive:

I remember this beautiful deed — your taking your purse out of your pocket and throwing it [to him].
Manf. sha'. 60,11

D. As accusative object, in place of a noun, it functions as the direct object of a verb:

God is a witness that the boy was not sad because of leaving his mother.
Hus. ayy. I,140,8

Had not the sheikh sworn the boy would never go back to school?
Hus. ayy. I,65,12

The noun clause may be introduced by the particle لِ. If the particle is prefixed to the verb, the verb is then in the energetic (see Vol. I, § 27):

By God, I know that the mission of God's apostle is more highly blessed than mine.
Hai. sir. 355,17

The boy imposed upon himself [the duty] to perform the ritual prayers twice every day... and fast for two months every year... to keep it secret from his family and to make this a special vow with God; to feed the poor and orphaned with...
Hus. ayy. I,136,6-10

I swear that I have seen [it]! Hus. 'ala. II,73,3

So swear that you will recite to the monitor six parts of the Koran every working day and that this recitation will be the first thing....
Hus. ayy. I,46,10

A noun clause in the function of an accusative used as a direct or an indirect quotation is generally found with the verb قال "to say":

I have told you that this is my place.
Tal. (Br.) 131,25

I told you to leave.
Hak. sheh. 17,12

I told you I cannot remain here another day.
Hak. ahl. 14,14

Some say that all of them are wine and all forbidden.
Amin dih. I,124,1

I told [you], everything has changed!
Mah. zug. 11,20

(For indirect questions in the function of an accusative, see Vol. III, p. 102.)

Of special interest is the case of a noun clause functioning as an accusative object after verbs with meanings related to the idea of "to begin," "to start," etc.

In this construction, both verbs in the main and in the dependent clause have the same subject. The verb in the main clause is usually in the perfect and that of the subordinate noun clause always in the imperfect.

7. This construction should not be considered as being the same as an imperfect after an auxiliary verb. Here the verbs are always transitive and the imperfect fulfills, in the main clause, the function of an accusative object.
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

I began to write a series of articles.
Kam. (Zy.) 4,34

He began...thinking.
Hai. sir. 271,12

Summer had started rolling up its broad carpet.
Nu'. lig. 50,2

He began beating the boy with it.
'Aww. (Br.) 11,24

so that I began not to distinguish between books and reality.
Jabr. (Br.) 72,3

One verb in the main clause may take two or more subordinated clauses:

أناَّ بِخَاطِبُهُمُ يَهْدُوهُ وَيَسْتَوِيهُ
— مُّقَلُّهُ —

They began shouting in his face, howling and imitating the cries of animals.
Manf. sha'. 39,16

أَخَذُوا أَصَابَطَهُمُ يَقِيْنُونَ وَيَضْحَكُونَ

They began to wink at one another and to laugh and to point at me.
Gibr. I,169,1

The main verb could be considered as having only an auxiliary function; thus, the subject of the two—main and dependent—may follow both:

People began to awake from their unawareness.
al-Hus. (Br.II) 1,14

THE ASYNDETICAL NOUN CLAUSE

And the use of the dependent verb in the passive voice gives a passive meaning to the complete construction:

غُلِّيَ أَنَا أَبْدَأْنَ بِيَدَالِيَهُ
— عَنْ يَبِينَ —

But what did people then begin to say [began to be said] about a prophet who.... Hai. sir. 105,1

E As second accusative of the verb, it is very frequently found in direct questions:

سَأَلَّهُمُّ كَمْ السَّاعَةُ أَنَا؟

He asked him, "What time is it now?"
Manf. sha'. 90,15

(On the use of indirect questions as second accusatives, see Vol. III, p. 102.)

When the word order of the subject of the dependent clause is inverted, thus preceding the verb, the subject usually becomes, by governing attraction of the main verb, this verb's object followed by the dependent clause itself. If the subject of the dependent clause is a personal pronoun, this will be used as a suffix to the main verb. This is the usual construction when the main verb expresses the idea of "to let," "to make":

ذَهَبَ يَلَّمَبَ

Let him play.
Hus. ayy. I,35,14

دعِي أَقِيمُ اللّهُ رَزِيقَاتَيْ أَيْسِمٍ

Let me introduce you to my two loyal friends.
Nu'. lig. 75,17

قَلْ أَيُّ هُنَّ مَا تُخْلِقُ جُنُورٌ

What made you leave all these things?
Gibr. I,161,4

لَعَلَّكَ جَعَلْتَهُ بِمَعْرُوفٍ يَبِيعُ قَريِّتَنا

Bu Ma'ruf made us love our village.
Nu'. kan. 13,2

كُلُّ هذَا يَعْمَلُونَ نَفْلُهُ

All this makes us say....
Amin. duh. I,37,11

كَفَّكَ تَحْمِينَ الْقَضَّةَ رَفَعُ هذَا

How can you permit a louse to graze in such beautiful hair?!
Mah. zuq. 31,10
and also after verbs expressing will:

لِمْ يُؤْذِهِ بَلْ يُعْرِضُ وَيُزَكِّيْنِ For whose sake do you want him to dress and adorn himself? Hak. ahl. 76,15

This type of construction is also quite common after verbs of intellectual or physical perception:

لا أُرِقْ مِنْ نَفْسِي عَلَى حَمْلَ يَمِينُ I do not believe that any other Egyptian ever thought of it. Maz. (Zy.) 1,7

سَوَّمَ لِهَا وأعْدَتْ حَرَمًا فَذُوَّ النَّفْسِ Those who believed that Mohammed had died.... Hal. sir. 299,14

أَطْهُرُوكَ تَظْهِيرًا رَجَلًا تَتَدنَّا In the inn I think you would prefer a mature man! Mah. zuq. 29,11

أَطْهُرُوكَ كَانَ تَجَهَّلَ أَنَّ — I believe he did not know that.... Ra'ih. mul. 63,8

لا أُهْسَنِي أَبَدًا نُسَبًا I don't believe that I could find anyone who would answer me. Hak. ahl. 80,7

أُطْهُرُوكَ أَنْ أَعْلَمُ I think I know him. Manf. shai'. 90,11

مَنْ أَنَّى حَسِينًا أَدْرَكَ فَذُوَّ النَّفْسِ A few days ago I thought that I had found the secret of that change. Nu'. (Zy.) 33,16

أَنَا أَيْضًا لَا أُهْسَنِي جَهَّلَتْ الكُفُّرَ I don't think I came into the cave with all this hair on my head and in my beard. Hak. ahl. 36,7

عِنْصَ رَبَّنَا الْحَربِ تَنَفَّنِي When do you think the war will come to an end? Mah. zuq. 43,19

Do you really believe that she abandoned her religion for this reason? Hak. ahl. 30,15

I believe that it cannot be otherwise. Manf. shai'. 203,9

When the dependent clause is a nominal sentence, the predicate, if it is a noun (whether substantive or adjective), always seems to be attracted in case; thus it is in the accusative:

وَجِّهُها دَارًا كَبِيرًا أَبْعَقَة He found it to be a large, elegant house. Mah. qah. 91,11

وَجِّهُهُ رَجَلًا فِي الأَرْضِينَ He found him to be a man in his forties. Mah. qah. 61,19

ياَسَّرُ أَطْهُرُوكَ أَسَّرَ I had believed that Bahrein was a small, poor island. Ra'ih. mul. 198,16

However, the use of a pronoun to emphasize the subject of the nominal sentence (see Vol. I, § 11) will prevent this attraction:

وَجِّهُهُ رَجَلًا هذَا هوُ الْسَّبِيل Do you think that this is the way to get what you are looking for? Hak. sheh. 54,2

Special constructions with بَنَتْ, لَكِنْ, وَلَيْتِ, and تَزَوَّرْ, which are equivalent to the above (see Vol. II, § 114-6) should also be included in this category:
In the genitive case, the governing noun is always in the construct state and thus without a definite article. It is generally given in the singular but can also be plural, and the meaning of the construction is usually definite.

The function of the noun with its dependent clause is that of a temporal determination or of an apposition to a temporal adverb. As a result, the noun is usually either in the adverbial accusative:

- the night when she was dressed in white.
  Hak. ahl. 31,5
- Did you recognize us then, at the moment we came to you?
  Hak. ahl. 12,8
- I deceived myself the day I advised you to depart.
  Manf. mag. 54,11
- then at least we have him and the house of the Prophet saw her.
  Hak. sir. 316,10

or in the genitive in a prepositional adverbial expression:

- Since I have known you, I have found no rest.
  Hak. sul. 74,3

**THE ASYNDETICAL NOUN CLAUSE**

From the day when Islam started its expansion up to the present time....
Hak. sir. 2,9

except after the day I heard that monk speaking....
Hak. ahl. 20,9

that I, since the year when Dacarius sent me as his delegate to the provinces....
Hak. ahl. 62,5

as soon as they stood up, the Muslims who....

Although the meaning of the construction always remains temporal, the governing noun may function differently from that of the adverbial accusative:

- I have read old books prophesying the day when they would appear.
  Hak. ahl. 48,6
- until the day came when I went to the city of Tarsus on an errand.
  Hak. ahl. 20,15
- Have you forgotten the day two weeks ago when I combed your hair?
  Mah. zug. 31,14

At times, the governing noun seems to be used as equivalent to a mere particle to introduce a temporal clause:

- Ages ago, when I used to take her father's sheep to pasture.
  Nu', lq. 80,10
In such instances, the temporal clause may also have an indefinite meaning, so that it is to be understood not as "the day when" but simply "a day when":

He called on me, to tell the truth, on a day when I greatly needed a visit like his.

Hence the frequent use of جِبَنُ "time," as a particle to introduce temporal clauses:

At this moment, when the worshippers were leaving after their dawn prayer....

Hus. (Zy.) 25,32

When he was leaving the room, he heard his father telling him....

Mah. gah. 41,2

It will be the first thing you do when you arrive at school.

Hus. ayy. I,46,12

and to fill him with humility when he read these verses.

Hus. ayy. I,74,7

It is necessary that we be moved when we read literature.

Musa adab. 3,18

When I read these pages....

Musa adab. 31,18

is also frequently used in the genitive case after a preposition:

while there is not the least interest in the ways of life. Musa adab. 2,4

Mohammed rode his white mule at the rear of the troop, while Khalid ibn al-Walid went to the vanguard at the head of the Banu Sulaim.

Hai. sir. 429,23

These two individuals remained in their shops when the large wikala near the saloon began to close its door.

Mah. zuq. 7,5

Note that جِبَنُ after a preposition used as a particle may introduce temporal clauses preceded by أَنَّ:

while we are still dreaming of the past.

Zur. (Zy.) 18,11

before this [at a time when] the kalam had already ripened.

Amin duh. III,11,1

§ 210 THE ASYNDECTICAL NOUN CLAUSE AFTER A PREPOSITION

Only a few prepositions can be used to introduce a sentence without the help of a particle such as أَنَّ or أَن. Of these, only جِبَنُ has remained independent of the part of the sentence it introduces; thus it may govern either a nominal or a verbal sentence or, to express it more clearly, it may be followed either by a noun or a verb upon which it does not have any governing function. All other prepositions govern the verb, which thus follows immediately afterward as in the subjunctive.
§ 211

1. and its shortened form َفَنَّدَ introduce a temporal modification to the main clause in the form of a point of departure from which the statement of the main clause is valid; hence its usual meaning "from the time when," "since."

Rom. 1:3

It is followed by a verbal sentence with the verb in the perfect tense immediately following the particle:

My grandmother was my only concern since I had re-

Qal. (Zy.) 21,9

turned from school.

أحببتهما وأحببتا َفَنَّدَ كلا صغيرين

Gibr. I, 135,7

We had loved each other since our childhood, when we used to play among the houses.

أنت صابت إلى هذا الكفيف

Has no news come from Marnush since he went

Hak. ahl. 11,10

home yesterday?

أنت صابت إلى هذا الكفيف

Cyrano remained motionless from the moment he saw

Hai. sir. ط, 4

her. Manf. sha', 221,11

كأنني يستعفو وايقف ندم رآهما

It was necessary for me to meet you, since I know

Nu'. liq. 42,15

your brother, Selim.

وقد لَكَهُمَا الفِرْجُ الَّذِي

He described to him her strange life since she had returned to the vil-

Manf. mag. 250,2

لَكَهُمَا الفِرْجُ الَّذِي

Since it is a prepositional construction, َفَنَّدَ and the sentence it governs may be a part of a prepo-

I kept this letter from the day I received it
till now.

Hak. ahl. 84,10

시점은지 관계의 산출

As a particle introducing a dependent clause, َفَنَّدَ with the sentence it governs may precede the

But, since we came to the
cave, we haven't thought
of anyone but....

main clause which, under certain circumstances, will

Hak. ahl. 25,1

be introduced by the conjunction َوَ or َفَ. َفَنَّدَ

Since you brought us here
to this cave, you have

Hak. ahl. 11,10

been silent.

فِي مَرَاح لَكَ نَفَدَ ابْنِ اسْمَ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ وَهَوَى

Since humanity has been on earth, man has been

فِي مَرَاح لَكَ نَفَدَ ابْنِ اسْمَ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ وَهَوَى

longing to learn the laws and characteristic features of the things existing

The dependent clause governed by َفَنَّدَ may also be

Hai. sir. ط, 4

around him.

I mean since I was born.

Nu'. liq. 71,1

I have felt envious ever

Hak. ahl. 49,15

since the hunter described

I have felt envious every

This strange man.

There undoubtedly has been

since the Arabs settled

الْحَبَّ بِرَأْيِهِ الْمَعْرِفَة

one [Arabic fatherland]
in their present countries.

زَرْ (زَيْ) 18,18

الْحَبَّ بِرَأْيِهِ الْمَعْرِفَة

The unusual, albeit familiar,

الْحَبَّ بِرَأْيِهِ الْمَعْرِفَة

The odd, but familiar,
§ 212

A. ل (ell), introducing a dependent clause, can govern a verbal sentence only with the verb in the subjunctive; the Arab grammarians call it "the ل (ell) of the subjunctive," (see Vol. I, § 25): The preposition must precede the verb as its pre-fix; in cases of two or more coordinated dependent clauses all governed by the preposition, it may be repeated before each verb:

The one who was doing the cooking would disappear from time to time to have a look at the food to keep it from burning or spoiling and to occasionally pour in immense quantities of water.

Hus. ayy. II, 50, 1

but this repetition is not necessary:

If they firmly attempt to unite the Arab princes and reconcile the enemies, they won't succeed.

Rain. mul. 65, 1

B. ل (ell) usually introduces the intention of the agent; thus the dependent clause it governs becomes a final clause:

She stretched out her hand to greet me.

Nu'. liq. 36, 7

and do come back tonight so we can go together to Baha's.

Nu'. liq. 96, 5

He left them so that they might prepare their lessons.

Hus. ayy. II, 46, 6

that the Koreish had left Mecca to protect their caravan.

Hai. sir. 258, 8

The true author does not write just to write.

Raf. wah. I, 12, 14

Note the following construction:

Her lips moved as if to speak.

Mah. qah. 135, 14

However, it frequently introduces a subordinate clause that is not an intention of the agent, but rather a consequence either of the action or of the circumstances created by the action in the sentence or, at times, even of some unexpected event:

One morning, people woke up to find important news in the newspaper.

Sib. (Br.) 119, 2

Amina lived long enough to give birth to Mohammed and then she died when Mohammed was still a child.

Hai. sir. 105, 15

I returned only to find her asleep, complaining of a headache.

Qal. (Zy.) 21, 10

and he slept, only to awaken afterward to an exceedingly strong spiritual life.

Hai. sir. 134, 17
C Similarly, after كَانَ introducing a dependent clause with the same subject, لَّي expresses the possibility, capability, or tendency of the subject to perform an action. This, however, occurs only in negative statements:

They could not know, since he had allowed his friends to emigrate to Abyssinia previously; he, however, had remained in Mecca.
Hai. sir. 208,11

But this job could not let her forget that calling. Hind. (zy.) 32,25

which would not surrender.
Hai. sir. 79,19

I cannot believe it unless he himself tells me.
Mah. zug. 175,19

It was a salary he never could have dreamed of in [his] lean days.
Mah. qah. 164,12

The same construction can be found after an interrogative nominal sentence and will be translated in a like manner:

Who is he to...? How can Ibn Hadhdhal oppose us?
Raith. mul. 52,2

Who is al-Rahiani that the Sultan of Nejed should show enmity against the British for his sake?
Raith. mul. 22,14

D The dependent clause after لَّي may also be introduced by أَيُّ; in this case, it introduces a final clause, "in order to":

Mohammed...had been prepared in order to bring the Message to the entire world.
Hai. sir. ط 1,12

E As the negative compound particle لَّي, لِيَّلًا may also introduce a final dependent clause:

Judge not lest ye be judged. Gibr. I.193,3

He advised Abu Bakr to compile the Koran so that nothing would be lost.
Djir. tar. I.225,4

He kept his face turned away from it lest he remind Uncle Ibrahim that it was there.
'Awj. (Br.) 13,2

F However, a dependent clause after لَّي and introduced by أَيُّ is always causal, e.g., "because," "for":

that is because the Mus- lims form not a unity....
Sa'. (zy.) 6,2

for they observed that the [speech of the] city dwellers was corrupted through racial mixing.
Amin duh. I.312,10

[That is] impossible, for you don't speak elegantly.
Hak. sheh. 169,3

For no reason, except
Ayy. (Br.) 27,6
§ 213

A حَتَّى, introducing a dependent clause, presents an action that, in a more or less direct way, represents a termination of the action expressed by the main clause. Its meaning is usually a temporal one, but it frequently has different modalities according to the various ways the end introduced by the preposition affects the main action.

Generally, حَتَّى will introduce a verbal sentence with normal word order; that is to say, it will immediately precede the verb. As for the accompanying tenses and for the use of the preposition in the compound sentence, حَتَّى has always had a greater flexibility than لِ, as we shall see in the following paragraphs.

In its temporal meaning, حَتَّى frequently presents the verbal action as having taken place, e.g., "till that happened," and thus it usually governs the perfect tense:

He waited until the sheikh had departed.
Hus. ayy. I, 73, 10

I busied myself with opening the summary of evidence and questioning the witnesses until I had finished with them all.
Hak. yaum. 46, 15

So we remained until we entered the city.
Nu'. lilq. 32, 5

The lame boy began to beat it soundly until his hands were black and became tired.
'Aww. (Br.) 15, 23

In the morning the Muslims journeyed until they reached Uhud.
Hai. sir. 292, 21

B. The action of the dependent clause can also be presented as being in the future in relation to the action of the main clause. In this case, the subjunctive is used, which, contrary to usage in medieval Arabic, does not necessarily express the action of the dependent clause as something wanted or striven for:

Thus he used to feed the pilgrims until they would leave Mecca.
Hai. sir. 87, 7

The poet would remain silent until after a while they would stop making noise.
Hus. ayy. I, 5, 11

Both move backward until they reach the nearest door.
Hak. ahl. 67, 5

Go until we call you.
Hak. sul. 93, 16

It is forbidden for your men and women to talk about me until you believe in God and in His Messenger.
Hai. sir. 216, 16

while he walks off [the stage] until he disappears.
Hak. ahl. 137, 9

in order to be able to be your betrothed before God.
Hak. ahl. 31, 12

I am not asking you [just] to hear such nonsense.
Mah. zuq. 208, 7
Its negation is expressed by 

حَتَّى، which has no effect on the governing function of 

أَنَّا أَكَبَّرُ عَنْهَا حَتَّى لَا أَنْظُرُ إِلَيْهَا.

I lowered my eyes in order not to see her.
Hak. yaum. 22,8

أَقَضَّتْ عَنْهَا حَتَّى لَا يَنْظُرُ بَيْنَ مَيْسِي 

I closed my eyes so that he would not expect an answer from me.
Hak. yaum. 44,18

لَا لَا بِطُغْيَا تَأْتِي عَلَيْهِ

so that the Korolsh would not start a revolt against them. Hai. sir. 208,3

لَا وَقَدْ جَهَبْتُ بِهِ الْأَلْوَانِ مِنْ 

so that the children would not take it from place to place.
Amin (Br.) 85,11

حَتَّى كَلَّا إِلَيْهَا

C حَتَّى also introduces a modification that amplifies the range of meaning of the main clause. The dependent clause it precedes means, in this case, "the limit" in the sense of "to the point of," "to such an extent," "so that."

In this construction, حَتَّى governs a verb in the past tense:

لَنْ يَنْهَيَ الْبُخْرُ عَنْ حَتَّى صَلَّ

Need had possessed us so that our children lay prostrate with hunger.
Gibr. I,137,9

أَخَذَ يَدَّهَا فَسَدَّ عَنْهَا حَتَّى

He took my hand and pressed it so hard that I almost screamed because of the pain.
Nu'. liq. 23,13

أَكَتَبَ أَنْ نَتَحَرَّمُ عَنْ هَذَا

He loved him to the point that he preferred him to his own children.
Hai. sir. 114,17

حَتَّى مَا كَانَ يَصَلُّ عَنْ أَخْبَارِ

to the point that they could not bear to be parted a single hour.
Manf. sha'. 15,11

but nobody knew him by this name... so that he himself almost forgot his real name.
Aww. (Br.) 9,5

The teacher smiled mechanically so that his golden teeth gleamed in the darkness.
Mah. zuq. 63,16

Note the following:

مَنْ أَنْتُ حَتَّى تَطْلِبْ إِلَيْهِ

And who are you to ask me that...?
Tai. (Br.) 131,27

أَنَّ كَانَ أنْ تَبْحَرْتُمْ فِي بَعْضِ

Isn't it enough for you to have deserted me in my distress that you should now rub [salt into] my wounds?
Nu'. liq. 23,15

D The negation of the sentence presents the action of the dependent clause as having been introduced before that of the main clause was completed: "he had not... when," usually to be translated as "he had hardly...":

مَا تَلِمْحُ حَتَّى وُضِعَتْ

I had hardly reached its middle when I heard....
Manf. (Zy.) 30,9

لَمْ يُبَقِي قَبْرُ الْعَمْسِ حَتَّى وُضِعَتْ

Their honeymoon had hardly ended when he tired of her.
Gibr. I,119,1

وَلَا أَنْفُقَ الْبَيْتُ حَتَّى دُورَ

The day had hardly ended when the dead were buried.
Manf. mag. 132,19

In this type of construction, the indicative of the imperfect may be used to emphasize the future meaning:
But hardly will the curtains of night be drawn on the stage of this day when the Christians will return and lie down....

Gibr. III. 23, 11

But hardly a day and a night will pass before you will feel the caresses of Life's fingers and so you will laugh and rejoice. Gibr. I, 109, 12

In order to achieve a greater emphasis on the idea of incompleteness expressed by the construction above, the auxiliary verb كَانَ may be used to modify the verb of the main clause:

كَانَ الرُّكْمَ يُسنَمْ باِ حَتَّى اَنتَفَخَ

The man had scarcely heard her when he began to shake and shiver.

Tai. (Zy.) 34, 5

The preceptor had hardly opened his mouth in surprise when the women's cries or tear are heard. Hak. ahl. 61, 11

(For more on كَانَ, see Vol. III, p. 258f.)

The negative particle لَ in the sentence may be إن (see Vol. I, § 36):

لَمْ يَنْذَرْ إِلَى الْبَابِ وَدَمَرَ

He had hardly stretched out his hand to the door and tried to open it when he turned around and said.... Nu'. lig. 19, 10

I obeyed my friend who, as soon as we climbed into the car, ordered the driver to.... Nu'. lig. 26, 12

As soon as his eyes fell on Lalande's dictionary, he smiled faintly.

Mah. qah. 11, 19

As soon as I tell him..., a wariness appears in his eyes. Mah. zug. 28, 9

The verb or the dependent clause following حَتَّى may be emphasized with the particle لَ; the tense of the verb may be either the perfect, which is usually preceded by the particle فَ:

لَقدْ فَعَلْتُ فَعَلَهُ بِذِيَكَ

to the point that they commented to each other about this and began saying.... Hai. sir. 429, 21

His meditation for the sake of the Truth grew so strong that he forgot himself, his food, and everything in life.

Hai. sir. 130, 11

so that some tribes travelled with 2,000 camels. Hai. sir. 245, 16

or the indicative of the imperfect, with either a present or a preterital meaning:

فَعَلْتُ فَعَلَهُ بِذِيَكَ

so that we see that Abu Muslim al-Khurasani assumed an Arabic ni'aba.

Amin duh. I, 37, 15

so that they would fight and be killed for His sake. Hai. sir. 137, 5

Mohammed loved and wanted it so much that he would say.... Hai. sir. 495, 12
to the point that some describe Zainab when Mohammed saw her.
Hai. sir. 316,10

Note that also the imperfect may be used after the particle ﷺ:

They are the most skillful people in this; [to the point that] some of them could even recognize individuals from their tracks.
Djir. tar. 1,213,5

F As a particle that introduces a progress of an action, ﷺ may precede a whole compound clause even in cases when the subordinate precedes the main clause. In this case, the latter is at times introduced by ﷺ:

When midnight arrived, only three persons were left in the coffee house.
Mah. zuq. 17,18

Note the following:

ourney سَبْعَاءً ﷺ فَعَرَّفَ العَقِيْدَةَ He will be at a loss until he knows the truth.
Mah. qah. 125,23

G The special meaning of ﷺ, "until," naturally leads to the insertion of a temporal clause usually introduced by ﷺ; its purpose is a closer determination of the temporal limit presented only generally by ﷺ. The verb following ﷺ in such constructions has preterital meaning:

They chatted all day long [until], when night drew near and the evening prayer was performed they gathered, forming circles in the mosque.
Hus. ayy. 1,108,11

He went off with three hundred men and hastened until, when they were one night short of Bajran, a man from the Banu Sulaim met them.
Hai. sir. 283,22

I hastened toward him to catch up with him; when only a few steps were between us, a huge tree stump fell on his head from a window of one deserted house.
Manf. sha'. 262,6

He would visit with them in the morning, then would leave them to perform his [Friday] prayers, then visit with them [again] until, when the afternoon prayer was due, he would leave them for a while.
Hus. ayy. II,46,2

It is of interest to point out that very frequently this double construction develops into a simple temporal one introduced by the compound particle ﷺ، or without the basic meaning of temporal progression originally expressed by ﷺ. In such instances, the clause governed by ﷺ becomes the main clause of the temporal construction and is structurally equivalent to a main clause which follows its subordinate and may, under certain circumstances, be introduced by ﷺ (see Vol. III, p. 285 and p. 361). The construction most often takes the perfect in both the main and subordinate clauses with a preterital meaning:

The girl began to wait for him and, when he arrived, she took him to her room.
Hus. ayy. T,117,7
The perfect may also be nonpreterit:

**For his brother, the Azhari, was coming back from Cairo in a few days and, when he ended his vacation, he would take him along to al-Azhar.**

Hus. ayy. I,64,5

You will attend a lesson that is not meant for you but just for me; then, when we shall have finished the lesson, I shall take you to al-Azhar.

Hus. ayy. I,142,1

Some authors expand these compound particles by adding an adverbial with the resulting form which has the same meaning as that above:

as if they could not believe that a young man such as I could stand before them and dare to speak as I did; when I had finished, one of them approached me and said....

Gibr. I,167,10

Miryam went out of the house following her mother's tracks, shivering from cold and fear; when she reached the spot and saw the youth stretched out on the snow, motionless, she moaned and cried out.

Gibr. I,158,5

The two women carried the youth, while the strong winds fought and the snow clung to their feet; when they reached the hut with him, they laid him down by the fireplace.

Gibr. I,158,10

**The frequent use of **حَتَّى before different conjunctions or adverbial expressions developed from its meaning as an emphatic particle used to amplify the validity of the verbal action in the main clause: "to the point of..." "to such an extent that..." "so that...". It is especially common when the subordinate clause it introduces is presented as a progression or the effect of a progression of the verbal action expressed by the main clause. In such constructions, **حَتَّى has an adverbial function (also see Vol. II, § 125):**

I must get hold of him, even if I have to go to the ends of the world and even if I have to spend everything I own.

Nu'. lqg. 34,14

as if the room were an exclusive florist's shop.

Nu'. lqg. 36,4

They remained good friends even after work caused them to separate.

Mah. z.ug. 41,9
What parent will not grieve when his daughter leaves, even if she should only be going to his neighbor’s house or to a king’s palace?
Gibr. II,41,8

The fever abated, as if the medicine which his family had let him drink had had its effect.
Hai. sir. 502,16

I When used adverbially to express the progression and limit of the validity of the verb in the main clause, may introduce any part of the sentence, usually a nominal one, without any governing function:

أَمْلِ يُنْفَرُ حَتَّى أَلْيَأَتَ الْيَدُ (ارْجِعْ إِلَى اللّهِ)

Hasn’t even the slave who went with him returned yet? Hak. ahl. 84,13

لَا يَعْرِفُ حَتَّى مِن أَيْنْ يَأْصَلُ (هَذَا الصُّوَى)

He did not even know where this voice came from.
Hus. ayy. II,36,17

سَمِعتُ حَتَّى النَّعْمَةَ يَقْتُنُونَ (هَذَا عِبَادُ الْدِّينِ)

I heard even the servants complaining.
Raih. mul. 66,17

Note the following construction:

إِنَّ هَامَّ تَفْيِيرُ حَتَّى أَسْخَارُ لَا يُدْخِلُنَا

He is poor; he doesn’t even smoke cigarettes.
Mah. gah. 21,20

and may also introduce a complete sentence:

حَتَّى أَبُو بَكْرُ السَّيِّدُ — فَتِيمَتْ لَا يُعْرِفُ مِنْ الأَمْرِ إِلَّا أَكْبَلًا (مَعَنًا)

even Abu Bakr, who..., knew only very little of this matter.
Hai. sir. 210,9

Even the Communist State itself was not a new one.
Hus. (Br.II) 77,11

and a subordinate clause:

لا يَلْبِنَ النَّاسُ الْعَلْقَةَ الْرَّبِّيَةِ أَلْيَأَتَ الْيَدُ (عَلَيْهِ نَعْمَة)

the rural milieu where the British forced us to live...and whose values we accepted even when living in the city....
Musa adab. 182,2

لَا يَعْرِفُ حَتَّى مِن أَيْنْ يَأْصَلُ (هَذَا الصُّوَى)

so that if Shaugi and al-Jarim were hypocritical, what would that have to do with literature?
Musa adab. 48,3

هَذَا اقتِراحُ جَمِيلٌ وَأَنَّا أًؤُيُّدُونَ حَتَّى (وَلَكَ نَتَحْبَسُ هَذَا الْكَلَّبُ الْدِّينِ)

This is a good suggestion and I support it even if we do not know the writer whose translation we will be reading.
Musa adab. 48,15

J Usually, however, a complete sentence after حَتَّى in this type of adverbial-connective function is used as a noun clause introduced by إن 91 or إن 92. 8 Since, as connectives adverb, has no governing function on either the noun or the sentence following it, the use of إن and أَنَّ 8 should actually be determined by the relationship of the noun clause to the preceding sentence; if it is a subordinating one, then أَنَّ should be used; إن should be employed only when there is a coordination. In modern Arabic, however, there seems to be no clear distinction between either case, and both particles are used indiscriminately. Thus, the following are found with أَنَّ 91:

A kiss is a noble thing, My Lady! Even the Queen of France has not denied them to some English noblemen.
Mant. sh. 185,16

8. On the use of حَتَّى in classical Arabic to introduce a noun clause, see Reck., Synt. Verb., p. 672.

9. We are only taking into consideration those cases in which the printed text includes the hamsa.
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

All my life I was forbidden the bliss of woman's affection and tenderness. Even my mother, as I have been told, could not find me handsome.

M. 281, 11

Some readers have been so exaggerated in their praise and acclaim that they were not satisfied with [writing by] mail but preferred to send a telegram.

Musa adab. 46, 3

[That the spread of the Muslim religion in several countries was completed after... [Its] diffusion even occurred in some countries in a form independent of political influence.

Hus. (br.i1) 78, 9

§ 214 INDIRECT QUESTIONS

A question is most often expressed as an independent (interrogative) proposition following verbs of oral communication such as "to say," "to ask," and the like. Very frequently, however, the question is not considered as actually being independent, but becomes incorporated into the preceding statement. The content of the interrogative proposition is not directed at any person in particular but is only given as the content of the oral expression and is thus found primarily after the same verbs used for the direct question: چ؟ "to say," چ؟ "to ask," etc. but also with other verbs related in meaning such as "to wish to know if (whether)," "not to know if (whether)," etc., and even with verbs expressing doubt "to be uncertain if (whether)."

English, along with other European languages, has developed special constructions that essentially differentiate between both types of questions, either in word order (e.g., He asked me, "Where have you been?" for the direct question, and He asked me where I had been for the indirect) or, with particles that introduce the indirect question (He asked me, "Has he come back?" as the direct question and He asked me if (whether) he had come back, for the indirect).

Arabic has not developed special constructions for this second kind of question, the only definite distinction between both being the use of the second person for the direct question and the third for the indirect, e.g., "Where are you going?" for the direct question, but..."
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

He asked him where he was going, for the indirect.

There is, consequently, no special distinction between both in the frequent cases of narrative dealing with a third person:

Tell me who she is [or, "Who is she?"].
Manf. sha'. 29,7

Tell me where it is [or, "Where is it?"].
Manf. sha'. 55,12

Ghalyas, [go to] see what is happening [or, "What is happening?"].
Hak. ahl. 53,8

The presence of a question mark is not a reliable indication of the nature of the question, since many authors (or editors) use it for both kinds indiscriminately:

His friend, the boy, went to him asking him whether he had met the servant and whether he had asked him for his staff.
Hus. ayy. I,103,6
I don't know what God will do with me after today.
Manf. sha'. 151,17

while others, at times, avoid the use of the question mark with indirect questions:

asking him what had brought him [there].
Hai. sir. 369,9

They began asking each other to whom the booty should go.
Hai. sir. 268,14

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

He stopped to think what he could do.
Hai. sir. 367,18

B Thus, an indirect question may be introduced without any structural change in the interrogative construction (see Vol. I, § 39):

a) by any interrogative particle:

He asked him whether he had seen anyone.
Hai. sir. 260,5

You ask about your bath, whether its water is warm.
Hai. sir. 69,23

He asked her whether she had some food to offer him.
Hai. sir. 89,21

b) or by an interrogative adverb or adverbial particle:

Don't you know how old he is?
Hak. ahl. 136,9
I don't know what its title was.
Hus. ayy. I,97,7
not knowing where he had come from.
Hus.'ala. II,198,6
He did not know when they would learn [about it].
Mah. gah. 112,7
I want you to tell me now where my house is.
Hak. ahl. 66,7
I don't know how long I have been standing here.
S. Din (Br.) 64,26
God only knows how much I suffered.
Mah. zug. 258,5

o) or by an interrogative pronoun:

I don't know which one of us is the oldest.
Nu'. liq. 70,17

asking himself what [it was that] he had seen.
Hai. sir. 133,10

They asked him why he had preferred [it] to the name of his ancestors.
Hai. sir. 109,12

He asked them what he could do to please the deities.
Hai. sir. 100,11

He asked her what the matter was with her.
Manf. sha'. 152,17

I don't know why he is so anxious.
Hak. sul. 59,9

Of special interest are some indirect questions introduced by the interrogative pronouns *ما* and *اَيْنَ*, which frequently become equivalent to pronominal relative construction (see Vol. III, p. 178ff.):

*لكِنَّكَ لَمْ تَعْرَ فَمَا ذَكَرَََْ* but he did not know what to say.
Mah. gah. 133,7

*لَمْ تَنْعَدْ الأُخْرَى فِي مَا ذَكَرَََْ* The other did not know what to answer.
Mah. zug. 29,12

*لاَ يُجْعَلُ مَا أَلَّهُ أَضْحَكُهَا لَوْ أَلَّهُ أَبْكَاهَا* without knowing what [it was that] made her laugh and cry.
Manf. mag. 18,10

She kept silent, not knowing what to say.
Mah. gah. 144,9

You know what I'll do? 
Raf. wah. I, 92,10

Note the use of the interrogative in the following:

*أَنْتُ أَرَى إِيْدَةً؟* Don't you know why?
Hak. sul. 20,24

*أَلْيَدُ أَرْبَما* I don’t know why.
Hak. ahl. 110,12

C Correlative and alternative interrogative constructions are also often used as indirect questions:

*لاَ أَعْلَمَ أَمْ كَانَتِ بنَتُ الْآمَرْيَة* I do not know whether I fell on the planet Earth or on another one.
Manf. sha'. 193,12

*لاَ بَيْنِي أَيْضًا أَمْ مَكَابَتْ* without knowing whether to believe or disbelieve.
Hai. sir. 358,19

*لاَ يُعْلَمُ أَحْيَاهُ بَيْنَهُ أَمْ ضَعْفَة* without knowing whether he was seeing an illusion or reality.
Manf. mag. 153,9

*وَلَا تَذَرْ أَصْدَقَ ْيََّكَ مَعَ الْكِتَابَ أَمْ مَظْهِرَة* And we don’t know whether we should believe the letter or the newspaper.
Raih. mul. 63,15

*وَلَكِنَّ أَنْتُ أَرَى أَنَا السَّاحِرُ أَهْوَأ* But, do you know which one of us is the magician —I, myself, the flute, or Shahla and Mahlab?
Nu'. liq. 76,16

D The conditional particle *إِنْ* “if,” may at times be used to introduce a simple or a correlative indirect question (see Vol. III, p. 319ff.):
Tell me whether this is true. Hak. sheh. 67,15

Ma'mun Ridwan did not know whether he would be sent to France or would remain in Egypt. Mah. qah. 79,15

E The (simple or correlative) indirect question quite often assumes, in the main clause, the syntactical function of an accusative:

 arbitré! Hel-hel’s glib talk is this

Think whether the owner of such an ugly, hideous face can live.
Manf. sha‘. 66,6

But do you know which one of us is the magician?
Nu‘. liq. 76,16

I don’t know what its title was.
Hus. ayy. I,97,7

and also as the second accusative:

سأتها لا باهله؟

They asked her how she was. Manf. mag. 109,11

سأنا نفسنا أي شيء رأى؟

asking himself what [it was that] he had seen.
Hai. sir. 133,10

سأله هل قد رأى أحدا؟

He asked him whether he had seen anyone.
Hai. sir. 260,5

or as a determinative apposition (see Vol. III, p. 65):

[Mohammed’s] biographers disagree about when wine was prohibited.
Hai. sir. 380,21

Looking for the place where the owner of this voice could be. Manf. sha‘. 37,9

I don’t know how long I have been standing here, whether [it has been] a moment or an hour.
S. Din (Br.) 64,26

Likewise, there is a disagreement over the time when he was born, whether it was during the day or at night.
Hai. sir. 109,8

I do not know from whence he came, whether he rose from the earth or descended from heaven.
Hus. ’ala. II,198,6

You have seen how well the Jews received him, hoping...
Hai. sir. 224,13

They began asking each other to whom the booty should go.
Hai. sir. 268,14

or in the genitive case after a preposition:

أخبرني بما كان وقى كيف كان

Tell me what happened and when and how it happened.
Nu‘. liq. 26,3

عجبت إلى كيف أتفرط أستسلمت

I wondered how I could have submitted myself to his will with such ease.
Nu‘. liq. 23,3

F Very frequently, an alternative indirect interrogative construction functions as a subject of a nominal sentence following "ساو..." equal, as its predicate:
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

It doesn't matter to me whether you read my letter or tear it up.
Mah. gah. 3,2

It makes no difference whether or not faith is as you say [it is].
Hak. ahl. 66,6

It doesn't matter whether these laws were in conformity with or contrary to the spirit of religion.
Sa'. (Zy.) 6,31

It makes no difference whether the first or the second of these two accounts is correct.
Hai. sir. 126,13

It makes no difference whether or not you expected [it].
Manf. mag. 153,17

Hence, ستوا becomes incorporated into the alternative interrogative, which loses the interrogative particle of the first member. ٌ in this construction is in the adverbial accusative:

[A new generation] possessing, in addition, the characteristics of the different peoples from whose blood it was formed, no matter whether they were physical or intellectual, moral or spiritual characteristics.
Amin duh. I,2,6

§ 215 SYNDETICAL NOUN CLAUSES

A subordinate noun clause is very frequently introduced by the particles ٌ and ٌ. They belong to the group called ' ٌ and its sisters,' by Arab grammarians who have been aware of their common origin. As we have stated (see Vol. I, § 109), both particles originally had a demonstrative-interjectional character with no function other than that of directing the mind of the listener toward the statement they introduce. The two, however, early lost their interjectional quality completely and are now used exclusively as introductory particles for a noun clause.

On the other hand, both have also been completely incorporated into compounds to such an extent that they can only fulfill their syntactical function within it; that is to say, that they are never used in the very beginning of the compound but must follow a part or parts of it.

The main difference between both particles is seen in the fact that ٌ governs a noun in the accusative case and therefore has a much closer relationship with the statement it introduces (Vol. II, § 112). ٌ, on the contrary, is much freer in its attachment to the statement, and only in the case of introducing the imperfect of a verb will it specifically take on a governing function, namely, that of requiring the verb in the subjunctive (see Vol. I, § 25).

Any attempt to present the different uses of the particles will have to account for two different aspects of their usage. First, the function of the particles in the subordinate noun clause, for the use of one or the other will determine the syntactical structure of the statement it introduces. Second, their function in the compound, for in frequent cases they cannot be used indiscriminately, and the utilization of one of the two may be obligatory or the basic meaning intended by the construction will be affected.

Although modern Arabic has a definite tendency toward a more systematic and consistent employment of these particles, it has by no means reached the point where a simple explanation of their usage is possible.

10. Also see Brock, Grund., II, p. 602.
§ 216 GENERAL REMARKS ON THE USE OF ًٌٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍٍ_
The perfect is frequently preceded by the particle ِٰ

that God had listened to her and to her husband, and that the crisis had begun to pass.
Hus. ayy. I,123,9

When they knew that the people had stopped looking for them...
Hai. sir. 213,16

He knew that dawn was near.
Hus. ayy. I,9,8

The Viscount thought that something fatal had happened to him.
Manf. sha'. 55,8

C When the verbal action of the noun clause is presented as something future in relation to the main statement—thus as something still to happen and not as a direct statement of a fact—then will be used governing the subjunctive, e.g.,

a) after verbs or expressions signifying an activity of will that thus present the noun clause as something intended, wished, or striven for:

while he was expecting that everything would turn around him.
Hus. ayy. I,103,2

Destiny wanted him to be my companion later on in the trip.
Rainh. mul. 25,18

b) after verbs expressing a command:

He ordered his companions to join the Ansar in Yathrib.
Hai. sir. 208,3

a) after verbs that express a possibility or capability of accomplishing an action, and also their opposite:

He could not remember the exact time of the day.
Hus. ayy. I,3,2

But what could he do?
Mah. qah. 126,12

It is impossible for them to understand who we are.
Hak. ahl. 69,8

It was not possible for his marriage to be still secret.
Mah. qah. 153,2
d) in expressions signifying necessity or obligation:

It was necessary that these problems be submitted for study.
Khal. (Br.II) 6,23

much of what he needed to know.
Hus. ayy. I,50,2

But you have a rank and a dignity that must be maintained and upheld.
Hak. sul. 46,3

e) in expressions signifying the acceptance of a proposed action, as well as its opposite:

It was better for her to remain where she was than to go across the desert without a guide.
Hai. sir. 356,12

It was natural, after this, that....
Amin duh. III,24,12

that 'Ali was the most entitled to become Caliph of the Muslims.
Amin duh. III,5,12

He thought he would stroll through the streets.
Mah. qah. 149,20

He hated to have his parents know that....
Hus. ayy. I,151,6

I was hesitant whether to fulfill my promise to her or to sever the bond of her love.
Manf. (Zy.) 30,25

f) after verbs or expressions meaning caution or a warning:

God forbid that....
Hak. ahl. 87,10

Be careful not to tempt him with anything.
Hak. (Br.) 41,10

I do fear that....
Raf. wah. I,114,12

and she would expect to have to call the doctor.
Hus. ayy. I,150,5

I am afraid the school is harsh. Amin (Br.) 89,8

h) after expressions of wonder or surprise:

But more surprising than this is the fact that they could accomplish all this in a few days.
Hak. ahl. 63,4

It was not strange that everything became corrupt during Farouk's time.
Musa adab. 40,1

Nor was it surprising that the first poet in Egypt was....
Musa adab. 40,7

D َأَن َّمَّا َكِنَّى َعَلَّمَ أَبْوَاهُ أَنَّ — It is enough for you to know that....
Raf. wah. I,26,21
We mean by "generation" that a man from one nationality would marry a woman from another one. Amin duh. I,9,5

they would stop being angels. Ref. wah. I,14,3

Don't come back till you are satisfied. Manf. sha' 94,5

until it was almost midnight. Nah. qah. 149,19

It occurs to me now that I could send some messengers. Hak. sul. 38,12

There, people had almost forgotten them in our day. Hak. ahl. 98,16

and even cases in which the action actually has occurred, as long as it is not presented as being accomplished:

How is it possible for four people to disappear with such ease? Nu'. liq. 60,15

as Adam and Eve in Paradise, before they ate from the tree and descended to earth. Manf. mag. 31,7

But the wonderful thing in this is that you should appear in our day. Hak. ahl. 64,2

as he [also] was used to making up stories for you. Hus. ayy. I,151,2

because he foresew that he would be interrupted in his listening to the poet's declamation. Hus. ayy. I,6,1

Why shouldn't the boy be happy, since he knew that he could study the same things his brother did and that he would be outstanding among his companions and friends through his mastering of the Alfiyya. Hus. ayy. I,71,5

may also be used to introduce direct speech or a question:

An interior voice told her, "Don't be sad." Hai. sir. 317,11

Then he urged his friends, "Bring your glasses here." Hus. ayy. II,27,12

In this instance, may also introduce a nominal sentence:

The muezzin calls out to the people that "Prayer is better than sleep." Hai. sir. I,6
In a negative statement, َّلَّا is used immediately preceding the negative particle, e.g., ١٢

\[ \text{G} \]

before the jussive is usually used for the negation of the perfect:\n
\[ \text{جحا لينة أَيْشُ لَّا تَحْصُنَّ أَنَّ لَّمْ يَبَنِينَ في مَفْتِنِهِمْ أَوَّلَُهُمَّ نَفَخِهِم} \]

so that Mohammed was sure that there was no hope for any cooperation or understanding with them.

\[ \text{Hai. sir. 255,15} \]

\[ \text{كَانَ لَّمْ يَسَّرُّ بَيْنَهَا لَّهَا بِنَوْعٍ منِّ الْمُقَوَّمِ} \quad \text{كَانَ لَّمْ يَكُنَّ بَيْنَبَا لَّهَا عَدْ} \]

As though time had not elapsed since then.... As though there had been no connection between them both.

\[ \text{Hus. ayy. I, 15,7} \]

b) The negative adverb َّلَا is used with the subjunctive. Note that in this case, َّلَا may also be written as َلَا. This does not seem to have any effect whatsoever on its meaning:

\[ \text{جحِّيْتُمْ لَّا نَحَالُبُ أَمْرُ} \]

He exhorted them...not to disobey the Apostle's order.

\[ \text{Hai. sir. 297,22} \]

\[ \text{خَطَّبُ لَّا نَحَالُبُ الإِجْيَابَ} \]

It is better for you not to know it.

\[ \text{Hus. ayy. 150,13} \]

\[ \text{خَطَّبُ لَّا نَحَالُبُ الإِجْيَابَ} \]

It is better not to try to answer.

\[ \text{Amin duh. I, 238,9} \]

\[ \text{أَلْلَّهُ أَنتُمْ أَلْلَّهُ أَنتُمْ} \]

To ask them not to forget....

\[ \text{al-Hus. (Br. II) 78,25} \]

12. The negation of the main clause may at times refer to the verb in the noun clause:

\[ \text{لا يَنْفِيُّنَّ أَنَّ الْإِيْدَةَ في مَكَّة} \]

We must not live isolated.

\[ \text{Mah. qah. 139,9} \]

13. Since negative sentences in the past tense usually involve a statement of fact, they are more frequently introduced by َّلَا أَنَّ, etc.) than by َّلَّا أَنَّ. But we also must not forget that....

\[ \text{Musa abad. 9,7} \]

\[ \text{يَسَّمِعُهُمْ أَلْلَّهُ كَانَ لَّمْ يَكُنُّ لَّهَا عَدْ} \]

I want to compose only what....

\[ \text{Manf. sha'. 121,16} \]

a) The subjunctive governed by the negative adverb, َّلَا, is used as the negation of the imperfect preceded by َّلَا:

\[ \text{إِذَا} \quad \text{أَنَّ} \quad \text{يَمَّرُ رَبُّكُمْ عَنْهُمْ} \quad \text{عَصُورَتُهُمْ مِنَ الْبَلَادِ} \quad \text{رفَعُ} \]

(When) they were convinced that their fortresses would not save them from destruction....

\[ \text{Hai. sir. 338,13} \]

d) The imperfect after َّلَا can also be found:

\[ \text{أَسَفُلُ في سِلَاءِ رَسُولِيْهَا أَنَّ َسَوُّ} \]

I divulged in official meetings that I would not move from Bagdad until....

\[ \text{Rain. mul. 23,21} \]

d) The use of the verb َّلَا to negate nominal sentences (see Vol. I, § 33) makes possible the use of to introduce them in the negative:

\[ \text{وَقَدْ أَيْتَنَا أَنَا أَمُرْتُكُمْ} \quad \text{لَا يَتَّنِعُونَ} \quad \text{مَعَـٰنِيكُمْ} \quad \text{وَأَرَابُّكُمْ} \]

Praise God...that you do not have [different] languages and religions among you.

\[ \text{Raf. wah. I, 29,9} \]

He believed that there was no protection from all these fearful creatures.

\[ \text{Hus. ayy. I, 8,11} \]
I swear that among the Christian kings of Byzantium, there was none who... Hak. ahl. 52,14

I recognize [only] that nothing can...
Hak. ahl. 79,2

When he saw that he could not become a friend of hers... Manf. sh'a'. 31,14

that there is nothing worth being upset about.
Mah. gah. 165,4

Finally, that may also introduce a complete compound consisting of a subordinate clause and its main clause; in this instance, the subordinate may precede the main clause:

I was sure that if the High Commissioner had known what was in my mind at that time... he would have delayed me another week. Rain. mul. 23,23

wishing that the earth would open under him and that he would drop into its bottom forever.
Manf. sh'a'. 115,3

§ 218

A As we have already mentioned in the introduction above, that governs a substantive, which is then in the accusative. It may introduce either a nominal sentence:

that your heart is clean and pure?
Manf. mag. 35,16

or a verbal sentence, in which case the word order for the subject of the sentence will be inverted:

He was convinced that the world ended to his right with the stream...
Hus. ayy. I,12,1

that one day he ate molasses. Hai. sir. I,20,12

or will be preceded by a personal pronoun of the third person in general reference to the statement following:

that there is no difference between one woman and another.
Mah. gah. 130,14

B The accusative case is not necessarily immediately subsequent to the particle; e.g., it may follow the predicate in a nominal sentence. A verb, however, may never be placed between a particle and the accusative it governs:

He felt that he occupied a special place among this large number of youngsters and children.
Hus. ayy. I,17,2

Note that a subordinate clause with a restrictive meaning following immediately after the noun it modifies may precede the accusative:

I did not believe that children under four [years of age] were so strong.
Hus. ayy. I,12,12

(For more information on the accusative after this particle, see Vol. II, § 109 and § 112.)
C The noun in the accusative is only very seldom omitted after  "أَنَّ..."

He knew that Magdalene had been sleeping in this bed. Manf. mag. 20,17

Our officers tell (us) that the great battle which...will take place here. Manf. mag. 117,7

D  "أَنَّ..." followed by a substantive or a pronoun in the accusative case, does not necessarily introduce a structurally complete noun clause, but it may, at times, precede a complete compound when the noun in the accusative governed by  "أَنَّ..." carries logical importance stressed by the particle:

I remembered [that] the year when Dacianus sent me as his delegate to the province and thus I was absent from home four days; when I came back, I had brought with me some gifts for my son which pleased him so very much that he exclaimed.... Hak. ahl. 62,7

E The governing function of  "أَنَّ..." is frequently directed toward a syntactical equivalent of a noun, demonstrative or relative pronoun, noun clause, or pronominal relative clause, without any apparent sign of the accusative:

Do you think that what you pay me every month is dearer to me than my own wife? Hus. ayy. I,61,13

that among the people are [those] who.... Kurd. (Sy.) 28,14

14. It could also perhaps be read as  "أَنَّ..."

F When a negative statement must follow after  "أَنَّ..." the noun governed by the particle in the accusative is precedent in the noun clause immediately subsequent to the particle:

Who told you that what you are looking for exists? Hak. sheh. 54,3

You realize that we cannot.... Hak. ahl. 69,4

Then she realized that she was not through with combing her hair. Mah. zuq. 176,5

He also remembers that he never would go out to his place by the hedge without.... Hus. ayy. I,5,14

The truth is that he can only perceive this very vaguely. And that he now cannot.... Hus. ayy. I,17,4
A consequence of the function of ُّ أن in bringing the listener's attention to a noun as a component of a sentence involved in an action is the fact that it is especially common after verbs or expressions which intend the noun clause to be a statement of fact.

However, the use of ُّ أن in such instances is obligatory only when the statement of fact requires the imperfect tense in the noun clause. Therefore, it is used after verbs and expressions of oral communication. (On the use of a noun clause after ُّ أن see below.)

He answered that your son had died?
Hak. ahl. 93,3

An educated, refined person told us that one of them asked...
Raf. wah. 1,138,8

It is told that his students once mentioned the watermelons of Aleppo and how good they were.
Hus. ayy. I,21,7

It is also used in expressions referring to mental activities, e.g.,

a) to know, to learn, etc.,

He realized that she was on the balcony relaxing.
Mah. gah. 134,16

He realized that they could see what he could not.
Hus. ayy. I,18,9

He did not know, My Lord, that the way to a man's heart is at times longer than the road to Sheba.
Hak. sul. 121,5

b) to believe, to be sure of, etc.,

He was sure that the world ended to his right with this stream....
Hus. ayy. I,12,1

Be sure...that I do not want to...
Hak. sul. 78,9

I believe I was beautiful at that time.
Manf. sha'. 96,10

There is no doubt that....
Hak. ahl. 44,16

I almost think that we do not confide in God very much.
Hak. ahl. 24,12

He was confident that he would please God.
Hus. ayy. I,100,12

He also remembers that he never would go out to his place by the hedge without....
Hus. ayy. I,5,14

I remembered that I was going back to my wife and child empty-handed.
Hak. ahl. 62,5

d) to occur (to someone), to imagine,

I imagine that I could die of hunger before....
Hak. ahl. 80,8

and also with any verb or expression which implies a statement of fact, e.g.,
§ 219 COORDINATED NOUN CLAUSES

A Coordinated series of noun clauses introduced by either أَمْ إِنْ or أَنَّ إن are often used. In such cases, the particle governing the noun clause may be repeated before each one:

Arabic: أَمَّا ﻛَانَ أَنْ ﺗُذَرَ الأَزْرَاءُ ﺑِنَاءٌ ﺑِنَاءً ﺑِنَاءً

"Would it not be better that the yearning 

Her accent when she spoke indicated that she came from the highlands (Upper Egypt). Hus. ayy. 11,81,9

The truth is that he can only perceive this very vaguely. Hus. ayy. 1,17,4

that because he heard his brothers describe what he had not the [slightest] conception of, he knew that they could see what he could not. Hus. ayy. 1,18,8

for he felt that other people had an advantage over him. Hus. ayy. 1,18,3

There is another reason, namely that the first Muslim groups...

Amin duh. III,7,20

It is up to you to believe [it] or not. Nu'. 1iq. 101,10

(He mentions) that they were seven and that some add to them the two qasidas of al-Nabigha and that of al-'Ashaa. Djir. tar. 105,12

and they were capable of observing and writing down whatever...

Mand. (Br.) 5,4

Mohammed's spirit was enthralled with seeing, hearing, and knowing. Hai. sir. 118,8

For he felt that other people had an advantage over him and that his brothers and sisters could [do] what he could not. Hus. ayy. 1,18,3

The particle will be repeated in cases of unusually long statements, such as the following passage from Musa adab. beginning p. 5, 1 ff.

For we ask the writer to... and to... (5,4) and to... (5,6) and to... (5,7) and to... (5,9) and to... (5,10)

B It may also be used before the first noun clause and omitted in the following ones. In this case the particle generally preserves its governing function:

أَجِبَ أَنْ أُقْلِدِ ﻳَوْ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ ﻤَ 

فَأَوْفَرُوا ﻏَاوَرَ ﻩُوا ﻩُوا ﻩُوا 

Graham ordered me to admonish mankind and to summon it back to God and His worship. 

Mai. sir. 136,19

I would like to say it about myself and be proud of it.

Musa (2y.) 2,34
Occasionally, however, we find instances in which the governing influence of the particle is not retained:

I could eat there and come back.
Amin (Br.) 87,9

I'll tell the slaves and servants to take care of his needs and carry out his holy orders.
Hak. ahl. 64,10

where people can talk and write about human rights. Musa adab. 7,5

They were afraid that the people of Yathrib would raid Mecca or cut off their trade routes to Syria.
Hai. sir. 208,18

hoping that the writer would again remember me, even if just with a few words.
Nu'. kan. 7,8

An impressed that love is like a flower
and wealth like dew upon it.
Manf. mag. 140,6

C When čn governs the same noun in the correlative construction, the noun does not have to be repeated.
This is especially true with verbal sentences used as correlative noun clauses:

I wish to die yearning and not to live weary.
Gibr. II,95,8

that they only worship God and not admit any other than Him.
Hai. sir. 239,10

Occasionally, however, we find instances in which the governing influence of the particle is not retained:

I could eat there and come back.
Amin (Br.) 87,9

I'll tell the slaves and servants to take care of his needs and carry out his holy orders.
Hak. ahl. 64,10

where people can talk and write about human rights. Musa adab. 7,5

They were afraid that the people of Yathrib would raid Mecca or cut off their trade routes to Syria.
Hai. sir. 208,18

hoping that the writer would again remember me, even if just with a few words.
Nu'. kan. 7,8

An impressed that love is like a flower
and wealth like dew upon it.
Manf. mag. 140,6

C When čn governs the same noun in the correlative construction, the noun does not have to be repeated.
This is especially true with verbal sentences used as correlative noun clauses:

I wish to die yearning and not to live weary.
Gibr. II,95,8

that they only worship God and not admit any other than Him.
Hai. sir. 239,10
That truth is that God is the Lord of the world,
[and that] He is merciful and compassionate [and
that] He is God, the Creator of all existing things.
Hal. sir. 132,9

He told Sheikh 'Abbas that... and that this here-
tical renegade had come to the village two weeks before and [that] he was living in...
Gibr. 1,179,8

that he had obtained his doctorate in agriculture and [that] he was returning to his [own] country, Iraq.
Ayy. (Br.) 27,27

F Finally, it will be of interest to point out that verbs and expressions as well as prepositions introducing a noun clause will generally be used with either one of the two particles ُأَنْ or ُأَنِّ. However, only in some instances will there be the possibility of making a clear and definite indication of which one should be used (see above). The reason for this is, first, the fact that only ُأَنْ introducing the sub-
junctive has a meaning that will be reflected in the construction. Secondly, in any other case, ُأَنْ may be equivalent to ُأَنِّ and thus introduce a statement of fact, and the actual use of either one will therefore be determined only by the structure of the sentence following; therefore, its determination will be grammatical, as seen in the following examples:

When he saw that he could not become a friend of hers.... Manf. sha’. 31,14

I think we should leave this fool alone.
Manf. sha’. 53,4

This unhappy mother thought that God had listened to her and her husband.
Hus. ayy. I,123,9

They think that during their childhood they were as....
Hus. ayy. I,145,6

He knew that dawn was near. Hus. ayy. I,9,8

for he knew that he could not use the spoon properly.
Hus. ayy. I,20,9

He could not anticipate the [very] small width. Hus. ayy. I,12,3

because he foresaw that he would be interrupted in his listening to the poet’s declamation.
Hus. ayy. I,6,1

F Consequently, although a coordinated series of noun clauses will usually be introduced by either one of the two particles ُأَنْ or ُأَنِّ, a combination of the two is not infrequent:

which gives you the im-
pression that there are definite boundaries be-
tween both dynasties,
that with the end of the
Umayyad dynasty, a page of
history was completed and
that a new page began
with the establishment of the Abbasid dynasty and
that there was no great
contact between....
Amin dhu. I,1,4
They were convinced that their fortresses would not save them from destruction and that they would necessarily fall in Muslim hands.

H. In indirect speech, however, or whenever قال QB has a meaning equivalent to other verbs of oral communication such as "to narrate," "to express," "to affirm," etc., then can also be used:

أقول أنت واختم
when the owner's servant came to telling me that his master was at the door. Qal. (Zy.) 21, 36

G. After the verb قال, "to say," إن is used as if it were introducing a direct speech or quotation:

قال إله مخلص يا كريستيان
He said, "You, Christian, exaggerate."

Manf. sha'. 137, 13

لقد قال فاقد كان وما دل إلا هو العالم
Gandhi has said, "My fatherland is the whole world."

Razz. (Br.II) 89, 24

لذلك أقول إن دلالة أبي نواس
For this reason, I say [that] for me Abu Nuwas' meaning is not...

Musa adab. 82, 10

قد يكون إن هذا الشدد يشد
It might be said [that] such corruption is also to be found in the nations....

Musa adab. 82, 15

Hence we find إن is used after verbs equivalent in meaning to the above with the same implication of a direct speech:

أبشر إله حافظ
I swear, You are afraid!

Hak. ahl. 55, 6

(also see Hak. ahl. 64, 6;
Hak. ahl. 43, 4;
Hak. ahl. 66, 10)

is also usually found after قال, even in cases of a clear indirect speech:

أريد أن أقول إنك تجسي
You want to tell me that you love me.

Manf. sha'. 166, 8

I say that you are wrong.

Hak. sheh. 77, 13

I cannot say that the authors have produced stories of excellence.

Musa adab. 182, 13

Can we truly say that there is an Arab nation?

Zur. (Zy.) 18, 17

Who told you that I meant something else?

Hak. sheh. 126, 11

Say that you are overcome by longing to see her.

Hak. sheh. 121, 11

Our officers tell us that the great battle which... will take place there.

Manf. mag. 117, 7

Note the following:

يمول نفسه إنه صغير يتوه وأنه صغير صالونا
The young man said that he would return wealthy and open a tavern.

Mah. zug. 179, 5

When قال has a meaning equivalent to "to order," it will then take a noun clause introduced by إن:

أقل ل أن أن تنف
I'll tell him to stay.

Hak. sheh. 89, 12
§ 220 THE FUNCTION OF A NOUN CLAUSE

A noun clause introduced by ِأَنْ or ِأَنْ may have, within the compound, the syntactical function of:

a) a subject:

أَنْ تَفْنَى أنَّ ذُكُورَةٌ لَيْنَ ذِلِكَ
I had to argue with him.
Maz. (Zy.) 1,26

أَنْ تَفْنَى أنَّ ذُكُورَةٌ لَيْنَ ذِلِكَ
Then it does not take long for him to come back seeking forgiveness.
Gibr. I,109,15

إِنَّكَ كَانَ عَلَى أَنَّكَ أَتَعْفَّ
It occurred to me that the one approaching might be a thief.
Maz. (Zy.) 10,12

إِنَّكَ كَانَ عَلَى أَنَّكَ أَتَعْفَّ
It was natural, then, that the Badouins of the Arabic peninsula were the princes of the desert.
Hai. sir. 72,16

إِنَّكَ كَانَ عَلَى أَنَّكَ أَتَعْفَّ
You must repeat it.
Hus. ayy. I,41,12

إِنَّكَ كَانَ عَلَى أَنَّكَ أَتَعْفَّ
It was natural for such a country as this to be like the great deserts of Africa in which nobody could live.
Hai. sir. 72,3

إِنَّكَ كَانَ عَلَى أَنَّكَ أَتَعْفَّ
Is it possible for any human being to....
Musa adab. 174,10

إِنَّكَ كَانَ عَلَى أَنَّكَ أَتَعْفَّ
But you seldom find a poet's composition in which the Arab praises [the fact] that he is an Arab.
Amin duh. I,18,7

b) a predicate

أَنْ تَفْنَى أنَّ ذُكُورَةٌ لَيْنَ ذِلِكَ
standing alone because of qualities which were seldom found together in any of his contemporaries.
Manf. sha'. 7,4

أَنْ تَفْنَى أنَّ ذُكُورَةٌ لَيْنَ ذِلِكَ
Some constructions resulting after the ellipsis of a preposition (see Vol. II, § 70 and also Vol. III, p. 145) should be considered as noun clauses in the function of a subject:

كَلْ يَنْبِعُ أنَّكَ أَتَعْفَّ
He must speak.
Mah. qah. 146,21

كَلْ يَنْبِعُ أنَّكَ أَتَعْفَّ
He must be the son of an Indian Rajah.
Ayy. (Br.) 27,21

أَنْ تَفْنَى أنَّ ذُكُورَةٌ لَيْنَ ذِلِكَ
It is not always clear what is intended as subject and what as predicate. Nor does a substantive, or pronoun, preceding the clause necessarily have to be the subject:

مَا أَنْتَ جَمِيلُ إِلَّا ضَفَعٌ كَأَنْ لَا عَلَمَ يَعْلَمُ حَيَّ
That is because he heard his brothers describing some things of which he had no conception.
Hus. ayy. I,18,8

مَا أَنْتَ جَمِيلُ إِلَّا ضَفَعٌ كَأَنْ لَا عَلَمَ يَعْلَمُ حَيَّ
The truth is that he was happy in those days.
Hus. ayy. I,64,8

مَا أَنْتَ جَمِيلُ إِلَّا ضَفَعٌ كَأَنْ لَا عَلَمَ يَعْلَمُ حَيَّ
It was his custom to withdraw every year to a mosque during the last ten days of Ramadan.
Raf. (Zy.) 20,3

مَا أَنْتَ جَمِيلُ إِلَّا ضَفَعٌ كَأَنْ لَا عَلَمَ يَعْلَمُ حَيَّ
The answer to your question is that.... Hai. sir. 5,16

مَا أَنْتَ جَمِيلُ إِلَّا ضَفَعٌ كَأَنْ لَا عَلَمَ يَعْلَمُ حَيَّ
that much she knew about herself, that she dreamed of wealth.
Mah. zuzg. 51,13
This apposition is very frequently found after a demonstrative or a personal pronoun of the third person:

- **Is it impossible for us to ever agree?**
  - Hak. sul. 54,4

- **It is known that....**
  - Raf. wah. III,21,9

- **That is indeed a great honor that....**
  - Hak. ahl. 57,6

But it angered Sarah to see this equality between her son and Hagar's.

- **It will be a great pleasure for my arms to experience the same fate as my rug.**
  - Hak. sul. 113,1

or after interrogative pronouns:

- **What do you want them to do?**
  - Sib. (Br.) 112,20

- **What do you want me to do?**
  - Hus. 'ala. III,18,13

A noun clause may be used as a direct object after a transitive verb:

- **But you, Edward, know that I love her.**
  - Manf. mag. 158,18

15. The use of the demonstrative or personal pronoun is due to the structure of the main clause in which the noun function fulfilled by the noun clause should be in a precedent position, which is not allowed with ْأَنِّيِّ or ْأَنْ.
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

He asked him to let some pupils recite the Koran.
Hus. ayy. I,53,6

He remembers that the canes of this hedge were taller than he.
Hus. ayy. I,4,5

(The Koreish) went so far as to [the extreme of] interfere between husband and wife.
Hai. sir. 208,6

He wished to do something, no matter what.
Mah. qah. 127,1

or may be dependent upon an infinitive or active participle:

And we hope that.....
Djr. tar. 10,28

A noun clause following a verb or following a verbal noun that is usually found with a preposition is also to be considered in the function of an accusative after the ellipsis of the preposition (see Vol. III, p. 146):

He was sure that.....
Hus. ayy. I,7,4

I am sure that.....
Raf. wah. I,88,10

He was ashamed to ask about it.
Hus. (2.y.) 25,9

Though he was absolutely unable to.....
Hus. ayy. I,16,16

God is responsible for.....
Mah. qah. 40,21

THE FUNCTION OF A NOUN CLAUSE

He who increases in piety toward his parents is apt to.....
Raf. wah. III,12,13

a) a second accusative

after verbs that are usually found with two accusative objects or one accusative object and a prepositional phrase after the ellipsis of the preposition (see Vol. III, p. 146):

What prevented them from following Muhammed?
Hai. sir. 173,18

What prevents you from getting married?
Hai. sir. 122,7

He ordered his companions to join the Ansar in Yathrib.
Hai. sir. 208,3

I ask God to.....
Raf. wah. I,5,6

Here we should mention the frequent cases in which the subject of the noun clause is brought forward to the main clause to take on the function of an accusative object; cf. the English: "He asks that I go" and "He asks me to go."

Do you want people to.....
Mah. zuq. 27,2

What do you want me to do?
Mah. zuq. 46,2

A noun clause after the elliptical interjedion expression could also be considered as a second accusative:

Beware lest you tempt him in any way!
Hak. (Br.) 41,10
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

f) an adverbial accusative

A noun clause may also assume a function equivalent to a noun in the adverbial accusative:

Beware of touching me, beware of blocking my way. Mah. qah. 77,1

الاَيَّاكَ أَنْ تَفْسَسِيْنَ ... إِيَّاكَ أَنْ تَفْسَسِيْنَ... Beware of touching me, beware of blocking my way. Mah. qah. 77,1

A whole life between Brussels, Paris, and Vienna! Mah. qah. 72,19

How nice to spend one's whole life between Brussels, Paris, and Vienna!

After the copulative verbs كان and لِيَّس، a noun clause frequently follows in the function of a predicative adverbial accusative (see Vol. I, § 7):

لا أَنْ تَفْسَسِيْنَ... It is not my intention to say.... Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,3

إِنْ تَفْسَسِيْنَ... What he liked most was to listen to the poet reciting. Hus. ayy. I, 24, 11

and also after the verb لِيَّس، "to remain":

لِيَّسَ أَنْ تَفْسَسِيْنَ... For this [reason] it did not take long for the Umayyads to.... Hai. sir. 114, 10

لِيَّسَ أَنْ تَفْسَسِيْنَ... But very soon this resentment became a silent, deep sadness. Hus. ayy. I, 18, 7

g) a genitive

In a genitive construction, a noun clause may only be used in place of the noun in the genitive case, never in the function of a noun in the construct state. However, a noun clause may be governed by a noun or its equivalent in the status congenitus, which therefore never takes the definite article. The construction always has a definite meaning.

THE FUNCTION OF A NOUN CLAUSE

Ever since the time when the king of the city departed. Hak. sheh. 132, 2

She waited, hoping that she would achieve this great happiness. Mah. zug. 178, 14

Hasn't your longing to know who I am brought you back [to me]? Hak. sheh. 150, 2

The people departed hurriedly fearing that Abu Sufyan would slip away from them. Hai. sir. 258, 4

When I was as you [are]. Hak. sheh. 138, 6

Not only because he was the director's son but also because... Raf. wah. I, 82, 17

while we are still dreaming of the past. Zur. (Zy.) 18, 11

It had been poured with milk into large cups instead of pure in glasses. Raih. mul. 55, 3

for precaution [in case] that Mohammed had preceded them. Hai. sir. 260, 4

The following formular constructions are of special interest:

"except that...", whose syntactical function has faded to the point that it usually intro-
duces a statement (which is no longer subordinated) in adverbal relationship to a preceding one to mean "however," "but," "though":

I do not think...; but I do think it necessary to...

Hus. (Br. II) 78, 24

They may preserve...; but they must, at the same time, admit the necessity of striving for Arabic unity.

Hus. (Br. II) 79, 1

But he, instead of...  

Maz. (Zy.) 1, 27

But I can bring you some witnesses...  

S. Din (Br.) 60, 15

But, going out, I remembered that...  

Hak. ahl. 62, 5

"without," however, does not express a statement of fact; therefore, the noun clause is introduced by that.

He came into the house immediately without shaking hands.

Nu'. lig. 23, 3

that I gave the name Mohammed's Life to my study without adding to this title the eulogy of God's Prophet.

Hai. sir. 45, 17

§ 221 THE SYNDETICAL NOUN CLAUSE AFTER A PREPOSITION

Under this heading, we are actually dealing with noun clauses in the genitive case, since the noun clause is used in place of the noun in the genitive governed by a preposition.

We may draw a distinction between the cases in which the preposition depends directly upon a verb or a verbal noun (either an infinitive or verbal adjective) and the very frequent instances in which linguistic intuition emphasizes the unity between the preposition and the following particle with the definite tendency to make up new conjunctural phrases.

In the first category, the noun clause remains in its dependent position, governed by the verb or verbal noun upon which it depends with respect to function and meaning. In this category, the noun clause always follows, usually directly, after the verb or verbal noun requiring the use of the preposition. The use of either or will be determined by the meaning of the expression, as we have stated immediately above; i.e., in statement of fact only.

For any other cases or when the emphasis should be directed toward the action and not toward a nominal part of the noun clause unless required by the grammatical structure of the statement following:

Mohammed's spirit longed to see, to hear, and to know.

Hai. sir. 118, 8

He was compelled at the end to consult with his loyal comrades about what to do.

Hai. sir. 360, 8

All this and similar things prove to us that...  

Amin duh. I, 163, 7

Then she realized that she was not through with combing her hair.

Mah. zuq. 178, 5

So it would be best for him to control himself.

Hus. ayy. II, 33, 20
The Sultan pretended not to notice it, although the smoke of pipes was what he detested most. Rith. mul. 80, 23

b) **عَلَّى أَن** however, introduces a coordinated adversative construction, generally as an opposition to a preceding situation:

**عَلَّى أَن** أَهْلَ السَّلَاطَنَ مِنْ أَنْ نَخَذَ الْعَلَّامِيَّينَ أُوْهَ شَيْءٍ لَّمْ نَدْهِي

**عَلَّى أَن** however, did change somewhat. Hus. ayy. I, 67, 7

But it is not necessary for us to...

Khalid (Br.II) 95, 26

But Mohammed did not wait for the return of his two emmissaries to al-Haura. Hai. sir. 255, 23

But everything has its limits.

Hus. ayy. I, 75, 7

**أَمَّا أَاصَحَبُوا أَنْ يَخَذَ أَنْ نَخَذَ** He ordered his companions to join the Ansar in Yathrib but to leave Mecca separately. Hai. sir. 208, 3

**أَمَّا أَصَحَبُوا أَنْ يَخَذَ أَنْ نَخَذَ** Note the following:

Note also that **عَلَّى أَن** may introduce a condition and follow the statement it affects:

**أَمَّا أَصَحَبُوا أَنْ يَخَذَ أَنْ نَخَذَ** The Prophet confirmed [him in] his rank with the condition that he gather the tithe from the people of his land to give it to the Messenger's tax collectors. Hai. sir. 485, 13

a) **عَلَّى أَن** also with adversative meaning:

**عَلَّى أَن**
However, I was thankful to the sheikh for his kindness.
Raih. (Zy.) 23, 36

but she did not excite his passion as Ihsan did.
Mah. qah. 57, 11

But he realized that it would no longer be possible to beg Handis Bey.
Mah. qah. 65, 1

B Temporal Compounds
a) ْبَعْدَ   "after"

After raising his eyes to the heavens, he answered her....
Gibr. I, 97, 5

For this reason, some of them abandoned Mohammed, after having followed him a long time.
Hai. sir. 197, 9

I returned home... after drinking and listening to music.
Maz. (Zy.) 10, 2

Then, after we had left al-Manama's waters in the afternoon, the wind subsided.
Rain. mul. 226, 9

b) ْقَبْلَ   "before"

All this happened before my life had awakened from the deep lethargy of childhood.
Gibr. I, 113, 15

C Comparative Compounds
a) ْكَأَنَّ   "as if, as though"

He went on playing while the audience [reacted] as if in the presence of a great magician.
Nu'. liq. 30, 1

that everybody who sleeps in this cave awakens [feeling] as though their bones were broken.
Hak. ahl. 23, 7

as if you did not know how Bahá is.
Nu'. liq. 33, 3

He remembers the fence as though he had seen it yesterday.
Hus. ayy. I, 4, 5

At times, ْكَأَنِّ introduces a main clause intended as uncertain but likely to have happened:
The servant reserved for his master a piece of the watermelon which he put in the cellar. But it seemed as if he did not put it where he customarily placed the sheikh's food... and the sheikh hated to ask... thus...
Hus. ayy. 1,21,10

(For see Vol. II, § 126; and on the use of see Vol. III, p. 240f.)

b) كم, with the same meaning of a comparison contrary to fact:

كان لم يُعيثها مبيعا من العُويق

Hus. ayy. I,15,7

كان ليسا في الدنيا إلا آساها

as though there were nothing in the world but its own prosperity.
Raf. wah. I,33,5

كان لم يمر شيئا إلا يوم واحد

as if but just a day had passed.
Manf. Sha'. 255,6

D Other Prepositional Compounds

a) لان, "because," "for":

لا تعيش هنالك

for she does not live through herself or for herself.
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,30

لا يعيش هنالك

because they sleep together with animals in only one room?
Hak. (Zy.) 11,18

b) لان, "in order to":

Ellipsis of the Preposition

Mohammed... had been prepared in order to bring the Message to the entire world. Hai. sir. ط, 12

( ) دون أن, "without":

He came out as healthy as when he had entered, without noticing the [passing of] time.
Hak. ahl. 37,1

ثم كالت ليها دون أن أفعل

Then she said to her without taking her eyes from her... Mah. zuq. 174,12

§ 222 Ellipsis of the Preposition

Particularly common constructions consisting of a preposition governing a noun clause are frequently used with the ellipsis of the preposition involved (see Vol. II, § 91). In such cases, without changing the meaning of the construction, the noun clause will modify its syntactical relationship to the noun or verb governing it. Within this new relationship, the noun clause may assume the syntactical function of either

a) a nominative (subject or predicate in a nominal sentence):

أنا لا أريد أن يكون معنيا

and that he must be happy with this conversation.
Manf. mag. 13,19

He must be the son of an Indian Rajah.
Ayy. (Br.) 27,21

He must speak.
Mah. qah. 146,21

Then there is no doubt that.... Hai. sir. 168,2
**ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES**

§ 223 ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES

Adjectival clauses, as their name indicates, are those clauses which function in a compound in the same manner as adjectives in an expanded sentence, thus modifying a substantive.

This modification has, as does that of adjectives (see Vol. II, § 62), two different purposes, either that of determining the substantive which the relative clause modifies — thus restricting its meaning as intended by the speaker — or simply that of qualifying the meaning by adding to the substantive new aspects which are actually not necessary to the correct understanding of the statement expressed in the main clause; hence their division into restrictive and nonrestrictive.

A relative clause is always a complete sentence, but not an independent one in the sense that it must include the noun to which it refers, since it is essential for a relative statement to be a modification of a substantive. This latter is called "the antecedent"; its presence in the relative clause is usually taken up by a personal pronoun, which Arab grammarians have named "الضمير المتعلق," "the resumptive pronoun."

From the structural point of view, Arabic only makes a distinction between syntactical and asyndetical adjectival clauses. Of them, only the syntactical offer a relative adjective as exponent of their syntactical nature, while the asyndetical have no specific or distinctive feature.

The basic difference between syntactical and asyndetical relative clauses is determined by the nature of the relative adjective. Originally a demonstrative, it still has in common with other demonstratives the fact that it can only modify nouns already determined, either by the definite article or by a genitive.

The relative adjective was originally and still is attached to the substantive antecedent, that is to say, it belongs structurally in the main clause,
not in the relative clause; thus its presence in the
construction does not make unnecessary the use of the
resumptive pronoun.

Arab grammarians have expressed the real nature
of the construction only in the cases of relative
clauses used asyndetically, which they call "تَصِيَّغٌ
" (compare with "تَصِيَّغٌ"), "adjective"); while those
in syntactical construction are known as "تَصِيَّغٌ
" ("tie."). This name, however, merely points out
the presence of a relative adjective, "a tie," with-
out giving any information about the nature of the
construction.

It is customary to emphasize the parallelism of
asyndetical/asyndetical as equivalent to a construction
with a defined/undefined substantive. This, however,
does not reflect the conditions under which the re-
late clause is used.

As we have already mentioned, the presence of the
relative adjective "تَصِيَّغٌ", the "tie," is based upon the
grammatical determination of the substantive that
functions as an antecedent, which the relative clause
modifies and to which it refers. Hence, when this
determination is missing, with a resulting grammati-
cally undefined substantive antecedent, no relative
adjective is used to connect the clause with its
antecedent.

However, the actual function of this adjective in
the main clause is to emphasize the grammatical deter-
mination of the noun which it modifies, not the state-
ment of this determination in relation to the clause.
It is for this reason that we can understand the fact
that, while an undefined noun never takes a syntactical
relative qualification, a defined one may, and fre-
cently does, take a relative clause asyndetically.

§ 224 THE ASYNDETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSE

A The relative clause is used without a connecting
particle

a) in the previously mentioned cases of gram-
matical indetermination of the substantive antecedent:

This is a letter Leonardo
gave me. Nu'. liq. 85,5
This is a great honor I
had never dreamed of.
Hak. ahl. 66,1
He indicated to her to be
seated on a chair he had
prepared for her.
Manf. sha'. 92,13
In this news there was
something that greatly
surprised the boy.
Hus. ayy. I,101,5
He had a relative, a boy
of his age, who accompanied
him to school.
Hus. ayy. I,102,3
Journalists have learned
a new language in which
they write.
Musa (2y.) 2,31

b) after an indefinite genitive construction
(see Vol. II, § 72):

as a moonbeam entered
through the window.
Gibr. II,26,1
Let the hands and feet
of those who say he has
died be cut off.
Hai. sir. 505,20
It was a year of drought
in which the family suf-
ered destitution and
poverty.
Tai. (Br.) 123,24
everything I saw around
me. Tai. (2y.) 9,45
Thus, after an elative followed by an indefinite genitive, although the meaning is always defined as "the most...", "the greatest...", the relative clause will refer to the indefinite genitive; thus the construction will be asyndetical:

For her it was the loveliest gift she received that day. Nu'. liq. 29,3

You are indeed the best duellist I have ever seen. Manf. shab. 58,14

His appearance was the most handsome one God has ever created on earth. Manf. sha'. 101,6

The people saw the most beautiful girl they had ever seen. Manf. mag. 181,3

This is the first letter I received from... Raah. mul. 31,4

---

a) after a noun which is defined as a species—and therefore only generally (see Vol. II, § 52)—when followed by a nonrestrictive relative clause; for example, after a comparison:

For the soul is like a flower, that folds its petals against darkness. Gibr. I, 138,3

Truth is like the stars, which do not appear but through the darkness of night. Gibr. I, 164,19

---

Note that after a comparison, when the noun is followed by a restrictive relative clause, the clause is used syntactically:

like a dog following his master to the chase. Hak. yaum. 10,10

an akhun kal melk al-din ha'adl an sukh al-umma

This is not the first time we have shaken hands. Nu'. liq. 32,10

that it is his place in social life, where he does as he pleases. Raf. wah. III, 6,10

Mankind today is like a child whose mother is absent. Raf. wah. III, 15,20

Undoubtedly these are Dacianus' people who have come searching for us. Hak. ahl. 38,13
There was nothing there but the lame boy's shadow, which the electric lamp projected.

The number of its members was set at twenty, who were elected regardless of nationality from among...—

The doctors and the representatives of the Health Office had scattered throughout the country, carrying with them their instruments and their tents in which they isolated the ill.

a) frequently with temporal expressions, especially when such words as "week," "month," "year," and the like are used as relative clauses in asyndetical construction. The relative clause in these cases is represented only by a verb: "after so many years (which had) passed":

after generations had passed since the death of the Emir.

That happened twenty years after Hasan's death. Raf. wah. I,261,4

after more than six thousand years had passed.

the food which he had been eating for the past three weeks.

Didn't I warn you last week? Mah. zuq. 10,11

Until a century ago...—

during the past fourteen centuries without interruption.

Note the verbal agreement in the following:

Haven't I been a poet there for the past twenty years?

on the eighth day of the month of Ramadan.

B An asyndetical relative clause may be equivalent to a final clause (compare the Spanish envió quien dijera and the Latin misi qui disseret)17

a) often after a grammatically undefined noun:

Sa'd searched for a house to rent.

I looked for a word to say. Nu'. liq. 25,12

I don't think you have anything to which you should hurry.

17. Most of the instances presented here are brought together by Arab grammarians under the heading, "the predestined circumstance"; see, e.g., Reck., Synt. Verb., p. 450.
§ 225 THE RESUMPTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUN

A As we have mentioned above, the substantive antecedent of the relative clause is represented by a personal pronoun which assumes the proper syntactical function:

I made signs with a cane
That I had bought especially for this memorable event.
Maz. (Zy.) 1,10

It was an unavoidable evil.
Hus. ayy. I,93,16

But this is a heavy responsibility you place on me.
Nu'. liq. 17,12

He is an enemy whose friendship is needed.
Mah. qah. 62,22

They found themselves in a hall with a floor of granite.
Mah. qah. 74,2

B When the relative clause is nominal, the resumptive personal pronoun is usually brought forward closer to the substantive to which it refers, thus frequently inverting the normal word order:

everything I saw around me.
Tai. (Zy.) 9,45

every word he wrote.
Musa adab. 176,16

She said that in a pleasant and sweet voice with some feeling.
Nu'. liq. 42,11

The rural people...had a special mentality in which there was a certain simplicity, mysticism and stupidity.
Hus. ayy. I,96,9

He is an enemy whose friendship is needed.
Mah. qah. 62,22

C Inversion does not occur, however, when the subject of the nominal sentence is a demonstrative or a personal pronoun:

It is natural in a country which has such conditions that...
Hal. sir. 72,3

She composed a verse about this, which is translated as follows.
Ref. wah. I,19,7

They condemn us for things with which we have nothing to do.
Din (Br.) 64,4

for the Persians had a culture that was a product of their history.
Amin duh. I,8,13
so that he would not waste time which he needed so much. Mah. qah. 40,23

nor does inversion occur when the subject is modified by "the ل of general denial" (see Vol. II, § 108):

But here is an important matter that we must mention.
Amin duh. I,249,13

If they cry, it is with weightless tears.
Raf. wah. I,31,5

that knowledge is a sea without a shore.
Hus. ayy. II,17,7

That is something I do not care about.
Hus. ayy. I,61,16

We are a family without a man. Mah. qah. 178,2

nor is the inversion of word order found when the relative clause is a verbal sentence:

three days, during which it was not possible for me to.... Nu.'. liq. 21,1

and many others like them whom it would take too long to mention.
Amin duh. I,126,17

for reasons which would take too long to enumerate.
Amin zuh. I,14,8

In another corner there was an empty basin.
Gibr. II,114,3

D The resumptive personal pronoun frequently appears in a clause governed by the relative:

There is another thing I want to tell you.
Amin (zy.) 7,30

that the telephone has special rules which one must learn.
Mah. qah. 128,7

He memorized some nuwas which he soon forgot.
Hus. ayy. I,48,11

to tell him various stories with which I hoped to cheer him up.
Manf. mag. 255,6

I need you, Stephen. I hope you don't let me down.
Manf. mag. 117,13

There is another author whose works we must know.
Mus. adab. 176,16

E When the predicate of a nominal sentence whose subject is a personal pronoun of the first or second person has a relative modification, the resumptive pronoun may agree in person with the subject of the sentence instead of agreeing with the predicate, which is grammatically the actual antecedent of the relative clause:

You are a Bedouin who knows nothing.
Hai. sir. 370,2

I am a man without any money. Hai. sir. 120,23

I am a weak man without any helper.
Manf. mag. 49,15
I was a growing boy who thought only of the present. Maz. (Zy.) 10,1
I am a man who never lacks money. Mah. zug. 60,18

This attraction in grammatical person, however, is not necessary:

We are a family without a man. Mah. zug. 178,2
I am a man without parents or relatives in this tribe. Hai. sir. 415,16

§ 226 OMISSION OF THE RESUMPTIVE PRONOUN

The resumptive personal pronoun may be omitted when the context clearly presents the relationship between the substantive and its relative modification. This is generally the case when the personal pronoun is the subject in the relative clause and the sentence is verbal, since the subject is implied in the verbal form:

It filled his heart with a shame that has not left him till now. Hus. ayy. I,19,4

Journalists have learned a new language in which they write. Musa (Zy.) 2,31

The resumptive pronoun as subject is usually omitted even in the instances when it fulfills its function in a clause subordinated to the relative:

and another book, the title of which I do not know. Hus. ayy. I,97,7

It is not omitted when it functions as a subject in a nominal sentence:

He entered into a room very much like a hallway. Hus. (Zy.) 25,13

It is natural in a country with such conditions that.... Hai. sir. 72,3

Note, however, the following:

that I have married a man who is not an ordinary man. Hus. 'ala. I,17,1

I think that you are not a woman like others. Hak. shah. 106,9

When the resumptive personal pronoun assumes the function of an accusative object, it is seldom omitted:

It was the first blood the Moslems shed. Hai. sir. 255,9

and it is even less often omitted when it functions as a genitive:

That is the first time I have ever seen one single coffin containing two corpses. Gibr. II,91,8

that every time I went to the library.... Hai. sir. 19,12

The first time I met the Official Commissioner in Baghdad, he told me.... Raith. mul. 59,10
§ 227 ATTRACTION OF THE ANTECEDENT ON THE RELATIVE CLAUSE

When the relative clause is a nominal sentence with an adjective or participle as predicate, the latter usually precedes, causing an inversion of the normal word order in the nominal sentence. As a result, the logical relationship existing between the antecedent and the predicate of the relative clause becomes stronger than its ties to its subject; hence the predicate, while keeping its gender and number agreement with its subject, takes its case from the main clause, usually as an adjectival apposition to the antecedent but it can also be in the adverbial accusative.

The relative clause thus becomes equivalent to an adjectival or adverbial modification followed by a noun-modifier in the nominative case although this is unthinkable in Arabic in the normal sentence structure. It only appears when the noun subject is defined by a personal pronoun:

wearing a garment with a gusset on the chest to which a necktie was attached. Mah. zuq. 7,19

as the living agony whose reflection he could notice in his wife opened a fresh wound in his heart... Hai. sir. 128,13

(See also Vol. III, p. 161f.)

When the predicate of the relative clause is attracted by a grammatically defined antecedent as its adjectival apposition, the predicate also takes the definite article:

Muhit al-Muhit, previously mentioned. Djiy. tar. IV,270,7

one of the Arabs with whom Ibn Sa'ud was angry. Rahil. mul. 51,7

§ 228 PRONOMINAL USE OF THE ASYNDETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSE

An asyndetical clause is not very often found in a pronominal function. There are, however, cases of such usage with both the nominal and the verbal sentence.

The nominal relative construction mentioned immediately above may lose its attachment to the antecedent and thus be used in a function equivalent to that of a substantive, whether grammatically defined or undefined:

that what was intended was something which cannot be accomplished. Hai. sir. 13,10

God is, indeed, with those whose hearts are broken. Raf. wah. I,88,11
Arab grammarians, and also occasionally Western grammarians, like to see in these constructions, when they are defined, use of the definite article as a relative pronoun. Because of the grammatical parallelism of defined and undefined cases, we prefer to see in them a pronominal use of the adjective or participial forms in question.

§ 229 THE SYNDETAL RELATIVE CLAUSE

A The use of a syndetal relative clause is based on the grammatical determination of the substantive antecedent.

In order to express the connection between the substantive and its relative (or adjectival) clause, Arabic uses the relative adjective الذِّي, "who," "what," which is variable in gender and in number and, in the dual only, also in case.

This relative adjective is actually an old demonstrative particle preceded by the definite article. Its adjectival and demonstrative character allows its use only with grammatically defined substantives, upon which the relative adjective directly depends. This explains the fact that the Arabic relative belongs to the main sentence as the modification of the substantive antecedent and not to the clause as, for example, in English.

This is to say that the relative adjective agrees adjectively with its antecedent in gender and number. It also should always be considered as agreeing in case with the substantive to which it refers. However, since the relative adjective is invariable in the singular and plural, this agreement can only be ascertained in the dual, in which it still shows case distinction:

18. Note, however, the word الذِّي, which in the following example is logically defined and takes a syndetal relative clause:

... and the one who asked me was a man.... Din (Zy.) 3.6

the two boy musicians whom Cyrano had sent.
Manf. sha'. 167,14
these two Persians, who have been mentioned somewhere in this story.
Hus. ayy. II,44,19

The boy was astonished with these two voices, which would become harsh in the quietness of night.
Hus. ayy. II,42,18

I saw her two lips, which were like a daisy full of nectar.
Gibr. II,44,11

With their two camels, which had carried them from Mekka.
Hal. sir. 312,15

B The relative adjective in its gender and number agreement with the substantive to which it refers follows the same rules as any other adjective. Its plural being equivalent to a sound plural or the plural of other pronouns, it is only used when referring to persons:

All these differences, of which we have only mentioned a few examples....
Amin duh. I,8,19

Cursed be the hands that.... and cursed be the eyes that....
Gibr. I,150,14

He was one of those men who did not hesitate to show people his love or aversion.
Gibr. I,108,8

Those who ask me to.... forget....
Musa adab. 6,17
Note that a relative having a substantive sound plural as antecedent may also agree with it in number even in the instances in which the substantive might refer to animals or inanimate objects:

\[
\text{َبَنَبَاتُ الشَّياحِ السَّمْرُ أَلَا تَزَوَّدُ النَّاسَ إِلَّا أَنْثَىَ بَنَبَاتَ الصَّمْرِ أَلَا تَزَوَّدُ النَّاسَ}
\]

to them belong the crocodiles, which could easily swallow a person; to them [also] belong the enchanted ones, which live under water day and night.

Hus. ayy. I,13,1

When the substantive antecedent is in the dual, there is always agreement in number between the antecedent and the relative (see examples given Vol. III, p. 163).

C Two or more relative clauses in a coordinated construction do not require the repetition of the relative adjective:

\[
\text{مَنْ هَذَا الْجَمَالُ السَّمِيلُ الْبَيْنَ حَيْثَ يَسْتَغْلَدُ إِلَيْهِ}
\]

from this unknown world, from which we came and to which we shall return.

Qal. (zy.) 21,2

\[
\text{رَبِّيُّهُ هَذَا الرَّجُلُ الْوَلَدُ نَذِيبُ}
\]

the doubts of this man, whom she loved and venerated.

Hai. sir. 360,17

It is, however, repeated when the relationship of the coordinated relative clauses would otherwise not be clear, e.g., when the first one is very long or is followed by other clauses:

\[
\text{كَانَ لِلْبَلاَءِ لَعْبَةَ لَعْبَةَ مَثَالَةً كَانَ السَّمَالَةَ لَعْبَةَ لَعْبَةً مَثَالَةً}
\]

These jurists had a knowledge completely different from that of the ulemas, who had learned from books and who had a more or less close connection with al-Azhar.

Hus. ayy. I,86,11

D The relative clause, as we have seen in the preceding examples, follows directly after the relative adjective except in the case of its omission in correlative constructions as indicated immediately above. However, sometimes a parenthetical construction is placed between the relative adjective and the clause:

\[
\text{عَلَى الْحَمَيْةِ الْمَلِيَّةِ إِذَا أَتَّمَّهَا}
\]

That life which we, when we contemplate it, find smiling during the spring....

Gibr. I,76,14

(For more information on parenthetical constructions, see Vol. III, p. 375ff.)

§ 230 THE RESUMPTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUN

A Since, as we have explained above (Vol. III, p. 147), the relative adjective syntactically belongs to the main clause, it is only logical that the substantive antecedent be represented in the relative clause by a resumptive personal pronoun in the appropriate case:

\[
\text{أَما ذَلِكَ لَعَلَّكَ الْكَانَ الْبَيْنَ}
\]

Didn't he describe to you the place in which it is?

Nu'. liq. 39,4
denies the freedom which is a natural right of mankind.
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,18
cursing this man, whose heart envy was eating up.
Hus. ayy. 1,83,12
He described to him the strange life she had led
since she returned to the village. Manf. mag. 250,2
on that night on which I saw you. Nu'. liq. 12,3
the Devil, with whom people used to frighten us when
we were children. Manf. mag. 109,2
the owner of this tree that has no fruit.
Hak. sheh. 118,14
The young man was silent the first day and also on
the following day. Hus. ayy. 1,77,9

C However, the strong logical attachment of the relative adjective to the relative clause causes the omission of the resumptive pronoun more frequently than is the case in syntactical constructions. This omission is always conditioned by the fact that the context clearly indicates the syntactical and logical connection between antecedent and its relative modification.
The resumptive personal pronoun is therefore never omitted when it fulfills the function of a genitive
in the relative clause.
However, it is omitted

a) usually when it should function as subject, either in a verbal sentence:
from its food, that was brought to him from the house.
Hus. ayy. I,52,16
to the knowledge of the ulema, who learned from books. Hus. ayy. I,86,11
or in a nominal sentence:
Our Father, Which art in
Heaven.... Gibr. I,87,14
I, and some friends who are in the same situation
as I am.... Jabr. (Br.) 72,10
Her mother saw her grief.
Hai. sir. 359,18

b) not very frequently, but not uncommonly, when it functions as an accusative direct object:
What we see is a different world. Hak. ahl. 68,15
the doubts of this man, whom she loved and venerated.
Hai. sir. 360,17
§ 231 PRONOMINAL USE OF THE RELATIVE ADJECTIVE

In the same way that a demonstrative can be used as an adjective and also pronominally in lieu of a substantive, a relative adjective also may be used to replace a substantive whose syntactical function in the sentence the relative adjective assumes. The resumptive personal pronoun is required, however, and follows the same patterns expressed above.

The relative adjective in a pronominal function may be used in place of any nominal part of the sentence, except that of the noun in the construct state, and it usually has a definite meaning:

\[ \text{He told her what he had seen. Hai. sir. 134,9} \]
\[ \text{He is the one who will completely change our way of life. Hus. 'ala. II, 71,11} \]
\[ \text{After what we have mentioned in the preceding section, we can say that... Amin duh. I, 50,3} \]
\[ \text{Those whom you claim as kin seek your punishment. Gibr. I, 184,12} \]
\[ \text{Is he so certain that what is behind the curtains [of death] is not as beautiful as what is in front of them? Nu'. lig. 28,4} \]
\[ \text{away from the eyes of those who know us. Mah. zug. 55,8} \]
\[ \text{As it is said... Amin duh. I, 78,4} \]
\[ \text{Everything the jurists said about this matter is... Amin duh. I, 82,20} \]

The same thing happened to all those who collected the hadith.
Hai. sir. 49,14

He sought it [the diploma], but along with it, he sought other different things which people also seek in their lives.
Hus. ayy. II, 53,11

but he used better arguments in his dispute.
Hai. sir. 6,21

and that the strength resulting from the unification of the Muslims will be stronger than the one resulting from Arab unification?
al-Hus. (Br.II) 74,8

Here we should mention the cases of sentences with the interrogative pronouns \( \text{تن} \) and \( \text{ل} \) in which the interrogative sentence is expanded into a relative construction. The relative pronoun, \( \text{الي} \), then fulfills the function of the subject in the interrogative construction (see Vol. I, § 43):

\[ \text{من أين اتى عود؟ Who was supposed to come? Hak. ahl. 44,12} \]
\[ \text{من هذا الذي ينعيه أن...? Who wants to...? Manf. sha'. 41,6} \]
\[ \text{ما الذي أحدث هذا قدّ؟ What caused all this? Raf. wah. I, 71,21} \]

and also in indirect interrogatives (see Vol. III, p. 97ff.):

\[ \text{لا نعلم ما الذي أصفحنا لا ما الذي أكذبنا without knowing what [it was which] made her laugh and cry. Manf. mag. 18,10} \]
From a structural point of view, the interrogative sentence is considered as a whole part of a compound with a very limited syntactical function—that of an accusative or as apposition to an accusative—and the pronoun always remains a part of the interrogative clause. The relative is actually more closely related to the main clause, thus accounting for the presence of a resumptive pronoun in the subordinate clause;¹⁹ it has all the syntactical possibilities of a substantive, except that of status construction, since the relative pronoun must always be followed by the relative clause.

There are, however, frequent cases in which a clear distinction between both constructions cannot be drawn. In those instances, an attempt at differentiation would either be of no real syntactical interest or should be based on textual interpretation.

In modern Arabic there are no further definite characteristics on which to base a more exact differentiation between indirect interrogative and pronominal relative constructions than previously. On the contrary, there seems to be greater points of contact between both, increased by the greater use that Arabic makes today of the indirect constructions.

The structural difference between the two only appears in instances when the resumptive personal pronoun fulfills the function of a genitive within the clause, since, in such instances, it must be used in the relative construction but not, generally, in the interrogative.

Compare, for example, the following relative constructions:

He would ask him whatever he wanted.
Hus. ayy. I,102,12


¹⁹. The fact that both—the relative pronouns and the relative adjectives—follow the same patterns in the use of the resumptive personal pronoun can be explained as a case of analogy. Compare, e.g., with indirect questions, Vol. III, p.

§ 232 THE PRONOMINAL CLAUSE

The only pronominal clauses in Arabic are those introduced by a relative pronoun. The main difference between an adjectival and a pronominal relative clause is that the former always refers to a substantive in the main clause, which the relative clause modifies in very much the same way as an adjective does its governing substantive, while the pronominal relative clause assumes, in the main clause, the function of a pronoun; that is to say, the pronominal relative clause refers to an unexpressed substantive, whose function in the main clause is taken over by the relative clause. In short, an adjectival relative clause requires a substantive antecedent; the pronominal does not.

The relative pronouns in Arabic are ْمن, "who," and ْلّو, "what." They are actually the same as those used for the interrogatives, from which the relative construction has been derived because of the fading of their interrogative nature in some positions.

-found as indirect interrogatives can be considered as being in a position midway between their use as direct interrogatives and pronominal relatives.

In general, we may say that the difference between an indirect question and a relative construction consists, from the point of view of their meanings, in the fact that the interrogative clause intends to seek out information; thus, it is used only after verbs of an interrogative character, such as "to ask" and the like. A relative sentence, on the other hand, introduces a statement of fact independent of any request for information.
and also the following:

The women stood up in their loges to see what was taking place.
Manf. sha'. 37,10

with the indirect interrogatives:

He asked her what she had with her.
Manf. sha'. 23,9

that he did not understand why he believed his father's promise that year.
Hus. ayy. I,138,12

He (the boy) would ask him (the jinn) what (ever) he (the boy) wanted.

understood as an interrogative construction would have a different meaning: "He (the boy) would ask him (the jinn) what he (the jinn) wanted," and on the other hand:

Umm Hamida did not know what to say.
Mah. zuq. 176,17

understood as a relative construction would be: "Umm Hamida did not know what she was saying."

§ 233

A is used referring to persons; its meaning usually is general and indefinite, "who," "whoever":

that he takes half of his salary from whomever he helps. Mah. qah. 85,3

He said that with the voice of one who is talking to himself.
Nu'. liq. 12,9
Whoever wishes him evil is our enemy.
Gibr. I,198,6

whomever I knew of them and whomever I did not.
Hai. sir. 19,14

The teacher said as one who has exhausted his patience....
Mah. zvq. 64,7

Whoever dies will be resurrected.
Hak. ahl. 52,6

Whoever does not see sorrow does not see joy. Gibr. II,122,13

for he who assists evildoers is himself evil.
Gibr. I,180,18

The one who stands in your way is their partner in evil. Gibr. I,199,10

It may also have a concrete meaning, which is usually defined as "this," "these who":

the rest of those who were in the village.
Tai. (Br.) 124,1

Who was the first one to recite verses?
Djir. tar. I,72,24

The young man belonged to those who have a great love of books.
Mah. gah. 11,18

but may also be found with a restricted indefinite meaning. "someone." "something":

They poured milk from waterskins for those who wanted it.
Raith. mul. 49,2

The number of people who accompanied Mohammed on this raid was 350.
Hai. sir. 258,2

that they were the first ones to investigate the treatment of diseases.
Djir. tar. I,197,3
§ 234

A. ا  is used referring to inanimate objects and, as م, it is usually indefinite:

not looking at what is beyond the [superficial].
Gibr. I,108,4

Ask about whatever you wish.
Hak. ahl. 13,11

that they could see what he did not.
Hus. ayy. I,18,9

To my mind came the efforts which the learned have to undergo.
Maz. (Zy.) 1,2

but it also can be used referring to concrete objects:

They believed in God and in what His Apostle brought.
Amin duh. III,15,11

The same thing which let you accept such a marriage brought about my meeting with him.
Mah. gah. 158,2

I offered him all I had with me.
Hak. ahl. 35,3

It may refer not only to the identification of inanimate things but also to their qualities or states of being and, with the same meaning, to persons as well:

and how did you know what Jona, the son of Mata was? Hai. sir. 187,18

Few are the poets whose hearts are not inspired by love.
Djir. tar. I,156,2

Among the idolators are those who defy the stars.
Amin duh. III,1,18

but its verbal or nominal predicate may also agree in number with the logical idea:

Those who had come to help them, fled.
Hai. sir. 353,4

Nor did many of the converted understand its meaning.
Hai. sir. 197,8

Whoever had no fear of God joined them.
Amin duh. III,6,21

Woe to those whose springs are winters!
Nu'. lq. 28,4

that we are the first ones who have summoned the Arab princes to unite.
Raith. mul. 43,21

C When the relative pronoun has the function of subject it can be given a numerical determination with the personal pronoun of the third person in apposition to it. This pronoun actually has a resumptive function (see Vol. II, § 178 and also compare with Vol. III, p. 182f.):

Why not attract attention to me and to others in the same circumstances?
Kam. (Zy.) 4,32
They were few.
Amin duh. I,101,11;
Hus. ayy. II,76,17

Otherwise, 
may refer to persons only when modified by a prepositional phrase with (see Vol. III,
p. 179f.).

is also masculine and thus may take a masculine agreement even when referring to a feminine noun:

That is something we shall now talk about.
Amin duh. I,305,6

Among them there were some [shops] in which the food of the poor was prepared.
Hus. ayy. II,11,1

Among those shops there were some in which a [certain kind of] trade was quietly conducted.
Hus. ayy. II,11,10

When the relative pronoun functions as the subject, it can be given a feminine gender with the personal pronoun of the third person feminine singular in opposition to it. This pronoun actually has a resumptive function (see more examples below, Vol. III,
p. 182f.):

Some of them are close to the seashore.
Raith. mul. 221,5

, as the interrogative pronoun, may also be followed by the demonstrative particle ':

The women stood up in their logs to see what was taking place.
Manf. sha'. 37,10

A Since the relative pronouns express an indefinite idea, basically making only a distinction in species —"who," "whomever" and "what," "whatever"— without the determination that could be given by an antecedent, Arabic frequently introduces a closer specification of the relative pronouns by the use of a prepositional phrase with .

Hence, without actually changing the structure of the pronominal relative clause, Arabic secures for it a specific and concrete meaning equivalent to that of the adjectival relative clause. In fact, it is generally translated into English using an adjectival relative construction, for English has no equivalent of this expression.

As to the nature of the prepositional determination, it usually introduces a partitive specification with the preposition thus governing a plural or a collective noun.

, however, may also introduce a specifying determination and therefore be followed by a singular noun (see the following paragraphs) and even by a noun clause (immediately below):

to tell you of what the boy remembers about the fact that the days which preceded those of were strange.
Hus. ayy. I,109,15

B The prepositional phrase is usually placed at the end of the relative clause:

the efforts the learned have to undergo.
Maz. (Zy.) 1,2

20. governing a plural noun does not change the possibility of being used to agree in the singular, not even in those cases in which the prepositional phrase precedes the relative clause:

Some of them were fond of those shops and bought from them....
Hus. ayy. II,11,4
He lets me hear words I do not like.
Hak. sul. 55,14

He knows the friendship existing between them and me.
Nu'. liq. 16,1

This was all the furniture there was in the school.
Amin (Bu.) 85,21

_all the meaning [contained] in the word "body" and in the word "material."
Hak. sheh. 112,3

It was her most important weapon in the dispute which broke out between her and her neighbors.
Mah. zug. 22,6

He won't lack bread to live on.
Sak. (Zy.) 13,15

They translated many things from the Persian; among them are the above-mentioned Calila and Dimna and al-Yatima.
Amin dhi. I,187,7

Do I have a real existence besides the time and place which embrace my body?
Hak. sheh. 149,5

from the employees of the library of high and low status, those whom I knew and those whom I did not.
Hai. sir. 19,14

C. The prepositional phrase may also be placed within the relative clause as a parenthetical expression:

_D The prepositional phrase may even precede the relative clause:

Badr left in Mecca the deep influence that you have seen.
Hai. sir. 277,5

They entered any place they wanted to.
Manf. shā'. 20,2

I felt a passion for her which I could stand no longer.
Manf. (Zy.) 30,22

Some mutasilites say....
Amin dhi. III,32,19

Some theologians say....
Amin dhi. III,32,14

Note the following:

I stood there perplexed and excited.
Nu'. liq. 69,6

with the prisoners and booty they brought with them.
Hai. sir. 355,19
However, the ones in which the expressions 'مَنْ', 'مَنْ', etc., represent a nominal sentence, should be carefully distinguished from the preceding cases:

Among those are some who belong to an era which they call the age of knowledge and research.

Hai. sir. 11,17

Among those shops there were some in which a [certain kind of] trade was quietly conducted....

Hus. ayy. II,11,10

When he finished all this he would sit down with the crowds coming to him; some kissed his hand and humbly left, others talked to him for a moment or so, and others asked him about some need [of theirs].

Hus. ayy. I,90,11

Among those markets were some that convened every week.

Djur. tar. I,193,23

The presence of the prepositional phrase with 'مَنْ', makes possible the use of this pronoun referring to persons as equivalent to

\[
\text{هم ما سمعهم من أجل.}
\]

with the prisoners and booty they brought with them.

Hai. sir. 355,19

USE, however, is still conditioned to the fact that 'مَنّ' and 'لّه' have not clearly developed a structural distinction between their function as interrogative and as relative pronouns.

A Thus, the resumptive pronoun is generally omitted when it functions as subject:

\[
\text{أَلَّهُ يَا أَيُّهَا الْعَزِيزُ يَا جَوَابِي.}
\]

Gibr. I,97,3

The same thing which let you accept such a marriage brought about my meeting with him.

Mah. qah. 158,2

He asked him to send somebody to them to become king in Yemen.

Hai. sir. 76,10

and sees the past and prophesies the future.

Hus. ayy. I,98,9

I have abandoned it and all who are there.

Gibr. I,145,15

Its use either lends an emphatic effect or is designed to give the relative pronoun a specification in gender or number:

Why not attract attention to me and to others in the same circumstances?

Kam. (Zy.) 4,32

I entreat you by everything that is dear to you in this life.

Gibr. I,142,10

§ 236 THE RESUMPTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUN

'مَنّ' and 'لّه' as relative pronouns can be considered as belonging structurally to the main clause; hence, the presence of a resumptive personal pronoun. Its
doing the same as all others of his age.
Hai. sir. 115,18

B The resumptive pronoun in the function of an accusative is usually expressed:

He would ask him whatever he wanted.
Hus. ayy. I,102,12

like one whom fatigue oppresses.
Nu'. liq. 23,4

He told you today what I have been saying for years.
Gibr. I,98,1

Did he believe in what people call honor?
Mah. gah. 63,19

Then he could not find a word to say.
Mah. gah. 63,19

but it is also very frequently omitted:

They will not suspect the authenticity of whatever you say.
Din (Zy.) 3,14

We heard what you said.
Hai. sir. 204,15

that they could see what he did not.
Hus. ayy. I,18,9

I know what you mean and what you want.
Hak. ahl. 35,9

It was more than anyone could endure.
Manif. mag. 34,16

C The resumptive pronoun in a genitive function is, as a rule, always expressed, even in the cases in which the same preposition governs the relative pronoun:

The last thing I heard was the voice of the muezzin.
Nu'. (Zy.) 33,54

The first thing we should make plain here is that...
Musa adab. 37,8

The lame boy knew what was necessary to know in such a situation.
'Aw. (Br.) 11,21

He remained as he was.
Hai. sir. 127,16

We demand from the writer of our times what we did from the priest or the 'Imam in past centuries.
Musa adab. 10,1

The resumptive pronoun in the function of a genitive may be omitted only when it is a genitive governed by a preposition. When the relative pronoun is already governed by the same preposition, the prepositional phrase is frequently lacking (see Vol. II, § 120):

He prescribed something.
Hus. ayy. I,130,12
FUNCTION OF THE PRONOMINAL RELATIVE CLAUSE

§ 237 FUNCTION OF THE PRONOMINAL RELATIVE CLAUSE

As we have already stated in the introduction above, a pronominal relative clause may fulfill within the compound any of the functions in which a pronoun can be found; that is to say, all those of a substantive, with the only exception being that of the noun in the construct state (see Vol. II, § 72).

Thus, for example,

A Nominative:

He summoned his people as his grandfather, Qusay, had.
Hai. sir. 97,4

When he preached to the Arabs what he had to his people....
Hai. sir. 91,4

B Accusative:

He would ask him whatever he wanted.
Hus. ayy. I, 102,12

He sent someone to look for him.
Hai. sir. 112,22

that they could see what he could not.
Hus. ayy. I, 18,9

It delighted him to listen, and how many and how strange were the things he listened to!
Hus. ayy. II, 24,4

C Genitive after a noun:

He summoned his people as his grandfather, Qusay, had.
Hai. sir. 97,4

When he preached to the Arabs what he had to his people....
Hai. sir. 91,4

D As with the adjectival relative constructions, the resumptive pronoun may appear in a clause subordinated to the relative clause:

What I had previously learned from....
Hak. yaum. 94,6

thinking of what he could say to the Bey.
Mah. qah. 62,3

I went through all the vicissitudes of life which God desired for me.
Hus. (Br.) 105,17

Note the following:

for a novel needs personality first of all.
Musa adab. 182,2

Few do not know him.
Rahl. mul. 186,3

Whoever does not see sorrow does not see joy.
Gibr. II, 122,13

Who was the first one to recite verses?
Djur. tar. I, 17,20

(Also see Vol. III, P. 211ff.)
(Refer to Vol. III, P. 192 for special formular expressions with ِا in the function of a subject.)
All the meaning [contained] in the word "body" and in the word "material."
Hak. sheh. 112,3
I offered him all I had with me. Hak. ahl. 35,3

The first thing we should make plain here is that....
Musa adab. 37,8

The first news that reached him two months after Uhud was that....
Hai. sir. 303,19
and this recitation would be the first thing he would do when....
Hus. ayy. I,46,11

The most striking [feature] were his two black eyes.
Mah. gah. 12,3
The worst thing they can blame on me is that....
Hai. sir. 45,17
He included as much as he could.
Musa (Zy.) 29,6

Their spirits were moved with pity and compassion for him because of the misfortune which had overwhelmed him. Hai. sir. 187,14

as much as [in the measure of that which] my strength and my talents grant me.
Manf. sha'. 122,16
you could not understand how much pleasure and happiness I experienced when....
Manf. sha'. 123,11

(Also see Vol. III, p. 218ff.)

D Genitive after a preposition:

いいがらざるが、いかによく汝をしめすか

The clouds do not fly toward the sky.
Gibr. II,51,9

Note the following:

He would not call a woman, woman or lady or female or anything that man customarily calls her.
Hus. ayy. II,57,12
Their departure for Yemen went unnoticed.
Hai. sir. 211,5

Modern Arabic very frequently uses a pronominal relative clause governed by a preposition to express temporal or local ideas for which English prefers the use of an adverb or an adverbial phrase.

Such expressions do not seem very productive when introducing a verbal sentence; in fact, they are restricted to a short series without great variety either in meaning or in the prepositions involved:
You have, indeed, been good to me in the past. Manf. mag. 65,14

He is a poor sailor who rendered me some service in the past. Manf. mag. 100,5

She, it is said, did not slow down in her pace. Hai. sir. 89,8

In the instances in which the relative clause is nominal, the relative pronoun  funciona as the subject and is thus followed only by the nominal predicate. The nominal predicate is, in most cases, a prepositional phrase or an adverb:

They are not satisfied with less than complete freedom for the individual, the family, and the whole tribe. Hai. sir. 79,3

Arabia, with the exception of Yemen, was in reality unknown to the people of that ancient period. Hai. sir. 72,7

They were in disagreement as to where he should be buried. Hai. sir. 510,24

From morning until night. Mahg. qah. 37,22

Perhaps none of this will happen later. Manf. mag. 3,17

Mahjub looked around. Mahg. qah. 118,15

The nominal predicate may also be an adjective. This construction does not seem to be used very often but is, rather, restricted to idiomatic expressions. Since the earliest development of the language, the adjective seems to have been attracted by the governing function of the preposition and is thus in the genitive case. This attraction, however, cannot be ascertained in modern uncovaled texts:

for I shall die very soon. Manf. shaw. 272,2

Very soon Death will buy them for the price of rest in a grave. Gibr. 1,82,19

21. For more on , see Vol. II, Section 132.

22. The relative character of  ( فيما ) can be seen in its acceptance of a specifying prepositional phrase with (see Vol. II, Section 127):

For this reason...neither Byzantium nor Persia coveted any of the Arab Peninsula which...except Yemen. Hai. sir. 79,18
§ 238 FORMULAR EXPRESSIONS WITH ل

Of special interest are the following formular expressions:

A ل and لا "except," "are relative clauses in which the relative pronoun functions as the subject of the verbs لال and لال, "to pass," "to be over"; لال, "to exceed," "to transcend." Hence they are followed by an accusative, which is actually the object of the verb:

All the prophets were non-Arabic except four: Hud, Malih, Isma'il, and Mohammed. Amin duh. I, 55, 8

All the African seacoasts were inhabited by Moslems, with the exception of the Arabic portion to the south. Aqg. (Br.II) 139, 20

the special personality which differentiates it from others. Amin (Br.II) 121, 2

طه إلى أن عاش ذلك اليوم

He found the family, with the exception of Ihsan, expecting him. Mah. qah. 131, 2

may be preceded by the preposition في, with the same meaning as above (see Vol. II, § 127):

Some Byzantines, with the only exception of John of Damascus, despised Islam without taking the trouble of studying it. Hai. sir. 10, 6

23. For proper names used as indeclinable in modern Arabic, see Vol. II, p. 27.
There is nothing in this huge mirror except our image. Hak. shah. 151,2

Then he ordered all who were in the house, with the exception of his Uncle 'Abbas, to.... Hai. sir. 502,8

Everyone went with him except Sa'd ibn Abu Waqqas...and 'Uthba ibn.... Hai. sir. 249,13

The Arabian Peninsula was unknown with the exception of Yemen. Hai. sir. 72,3 (margin)

A بِسَّمَةٍ is also a relative compound preceded by "بِسَم" of general denial" (see Vol. II, § 108) and the substantive "بِسَم" equal," similar"; hence, its meaning "there is nothing like," from which the usual translations of "especially," or "in particular" are derived.

The expression is very frequently coordinated to the preceding statement by the conjunction بِسَم, and it introduces either a substantive in the nominative case:

The first caliphs emulated the Prophet, especially Omar ibn al-Khattab. Djr. tar. I, 214,19

The Arabs, the people of Mecca in particular, followed the news of the war with interest and concern. Hai. sir. 3,19

and from the corrupt systems in power, the feudal in particular.
Razz. (Br.II) 85,14

or a prepositional phrase:

because the countless tombs, so unordered and crowded, make one lose his way, especially at night. Maz. (Zy.) 10,8

most of the time, especially in winter.
Hus. ayy. II, 94,10
It may also introduce a complete sentence:

Sheikh Khaz'al was one of the Arab princes who defended the custom of repetition of marriage. The Sh'iz law of the mu'a was particularly helpful to him. Ra'ih. mul. 187,19

and a subordinate clause:

I have a nervous temperament; I cannot curb my anger when it is aroused, especially when my opponent is a plebian of weak constitution.

Din (Br.) 58,20

The sentence following َلِلـ by َيَنَّ َعَدَّلَ: Being away makes me very sad. Manf. sha'. 151,17

As for me, I love the village.

Sak. (Zy.) 13,50

As for me, I tell you....

Manf. mag. 65,13

The personal pronoun which refers back to the noun introduced by َلِلـ may be omitted when the relationship to the isolated noun remains clear enough to be understood without the help of the pronoun. This is the case when the noun functions as subject in both nominal and verbal sentences:

Only mankind is forbidden this bliss.

Gibr. I,125,17

As for Alexandria, it was the capital of Greek Egypt. Amin duh. I,272,12

We are the Earth's children.

Raf. wah. I,89,11

The candy store was a small shop.

Mah. zuq. 7,1
The book which was necessary to memorize completely was the Alfiyya of Ibn Malik. Hus. ayy. I,67,11
I remained standing, glancing from him to Baha. Nu`. liq. 102,2
We do believe that.... Qult (Br.11) 161,8

The pronoun, however, is never omitted when it has any function other than that of the subject in the sentence, e.g.,

a) that of a genitive suffixed to a noun or governed by a preposition:

اسمًا أنا بُتقَيَان ِنِعْسًا إلى الفَرْجُ أَن
As for me, I shall never doubt after this day.
Hus. 'ala. II,71,1
As for me, it is enough for my pride to....
Manf. sha'. 54,9
They have no opinion in this important matter.
Q. Am. (Zy.) 5,22
As for the people.... they did not care about them. Musa (Zy.) 2,11
As for the Christians, the majority of them began to....
Hai. sir. 3,4
As for the she-camel, it has 255 names.
Djir. tar. I,54,2
As for the people, they do not exist for him.
Musa adab. 38,20

FORMULAR EXPRESSIONS WITH ُ

or, b) of an accusative after a transitive verb:

اسمًا هوُمُتُ أَمِّيَّةُ هَذَا اللَّهُ
As for him, this name surprised him at first.
Hus. ayy. I,37,10
The boy's sleep was disturbed by these two voices.
Hus. ayy. II,42,11
The noun following ُmay fulfill its grammatical function in a subordinate clause:

اسمًا آتيَةُ فَمُتُ بَیَّرُ أَحَدُ عَلَى أَن
but nobody dared to inform 'Aisha of what the people were saying.
Hai. sir. 358,20

اسمًا آتيَةُ قَمَتُ تَسْجِحُ أَن تَدْعِي
may also introduce any other part of the sentence, such as, e.g., an adverb, an adverbial modification, a prepositional phrase, etc.

اسمًا تَتَّرِبُ قَمَتُ طَأْرَةَ نَبِيَّةً
Today you deserve to be called Sheikh.
Hus. ayy. I,45,2
But in religion and language, the Arabs were victorious.
Amin duh. I,49,4
اسمًا قَمَتُ طَأْرَةَ نَبِيَّةً
Now I have become chaste and pure.
Gibr. I,117,14
اسمًا قَمَتُ طَأْرَةَ نَبِيَّةً اسْتَثْمَرُ
Now you can hope for her as you wish.
Manf. sha'. 239,7

اسمًا ٌ قَمَتُ طَأْرَةَ نَبِيَّةً كَانَ
On all other occasions, he used to call him by his name.
Hus. ayy. I,37,5
Hence, ـ ـ also frequently introduces a subordinate clause, the main clause then being preceded by the conjunction ـ ـ ـ ـ.

Now that you have seen and heard what you have seen and heard, go back, my friend, and tell the people that....
Nu'. liq. 77,12

Since we know that.... it is logical that....
Hai. sir. 37,20

Now that everything is over, I'll tell you a war secret.
Manf. sha‘. 215,8

If we mean by such an expression that.... then no.
Sur. (Zy.) 18,22

If he wants to attain perfection, he must be aware of his nature.
Gibr. III,212,11

that its literature and art have personality is nature's law.
Zayy. (Zy.) 16,29

that this is the Koran's way is evident.
Hai. sir. k, 20

for you to return after midnight—that is something that cannot be endured.
Mah. qah. 151,9

Hence, the ـ ـ construction followed by ـ ـ may develop into rather long and complex expressions:

but the fact that they, with these riding parties which they began after having been in Medina six months and in which only Emigrants took part, aimed only at fighting the Kureish and at riding their caravans is something about which the people are skeptical.
Hai. sir. 244,11

ـ ـ is frequently used in correlative constructions to emphasize correlative nouns or circumstances, and it may likewise emphasize correlative subordinate clauses within the construction. In these instances, ـ ـ will either introduce the last correlative part:

When man feels all this, he has reached halfway to perfection, but if he wants to attain perfection, he must be aware of his nature.
Gibr. III,212,11

They have flesh covering their bones; we have around ours only skin like shoe leather.
Raf. wah. 1,89,10

They enjoy life, then they die; for us, however, our life is an agony of death until we die.
Raf. wah. 1,89,12
to drink one or two glasses, as we do, is all right; but for you to return after midnight—that is something that cannot be endured.
Mah. qah. 151,8

or it will also introduce all the correlative parts:

His brothers broke into laughter, his mother burst into tears, his father said... and, he did not know how he passed that night.
Hus. ayy. I, 19, 12

Among them are two main roads, one... and the other...,
Hai. sir. 73,4

The sleep of the boy was disturbed by these two voices, but his brother did not hear them that night as he had not before.
Hus. ayy. II, 42, 11

All rushed toward this [voice], the sheikh and his wife... the youths of the family and the small children...
Hus. ayy. I, 128, 14

F ِناَن is an emphatic particle composed of the particle ِنْا and the relative pronoun ِلِّ(, (compare with ِلِّ, Vol. III, p. 196). It has no governing action, since the relative pronoun ِلِّ is virtually in the accusative case. Structurally, it is equivalent to a sentence in which the subject is a relative clause.
The relative character of the construction can still be seen in such examples as:

They are not legendary apparitions; [what] they [are] are saints.
Hak. ahl. 54, 6

[What] that [is] is a temptation of yours!
Hak. (Br.) 41, 19

Composing qasidas is not popular, human literature... [What] it [is popular, human literature] is, is to look with an artistic eye into human and social problems.
Musa adab. 16, 6

is usually placed in the beginning of a sentence, either nominal or verbal, to emphasize not so much a noun as the definition of the noun or the action and the circumstances of the action as attributed to the noun:

He is my brother, Hashim's, son. I brought him from Yathrib.
Hai. sir. 98, 18

Don't be frightened, I am as a father to you.
Raf. wah. I, 93, 9

Sit down. You are just an ignorant Badouin.
Hai. sir. 370, 2

He loved vacations for all these reasons.
Hus. ayy. II, 174, 16

It was indeed a simple and easy thing.
Hus. ayy. II, 71, 12

It was not folly or frenzy or delusion or fever as he thought; it was love!
Manf. mag. 14, 13

I will give you no explanation.
Hak. ahl. 54, 6

I am a hunter of the wild.
Hus. ayy. II, 71, 12
that when a writer publishes a book for the people, he expresses his own spirit.
Musa adab. 10,6

Thus it can be used with an adversative meaning:
لست أستطيع أن أجيبك! إنما هكذا
I cannot answer you, but there is someone else who can.
Hus. ayy. I,151,15

It is also frequently preceded by the subject of the sentence, which then should be considered as an anacoluthon. Since the noun functions as the subject, a resumptive pronoun is not needed:
أنت إني لكني
You are just playing with me.
Hak. sheh. 106,14

إني إنني أحلم بكم ونساء
I only live through them and for them.
Hak. ahl. 17,16

أن اللهري إني كان إنسانًا لا إنسانية
that the one brought to be sacrificed was Isaac, not Isma'il.
Hai. sir. 87,5

أنما هي إليه إني أصبه
that what had been revealed to his friend had been revealed by God himself.
Hai. sir. 36,21

لكن هذا القول إنما بدل
But this word only proves that....
Hai. sir. 42,2

هم إنا فعلوا ذلك ليعدوا به أولى النجوم
They do this only to mislead those who...
Hai. sir. 41,7

أني إنني أفعل ذلك كراهية
that I do this only because of my hatred for traditions.
Musa adab. 18,1

But the resumptive pronoun may be used, e.g.,
الله معرف إلى عني الدين أن الوحي يكون في الموت لا الدمع، فنفمه
The holiday is the meaning of the day, not the day itself.
Raf. wah. I,35,6

لكن الفصل لا ينفع
but it is not you or I; your father is the one to be blamed.
Hus. ayy. I,42,1

إن أصدقى سمع للسيرة إني هم القرآن الكريم
that the most trustworthy source for [Mohammed's] biography is the precious Koran.
Hai. sir. 18,14

The noun preceding the particle إنما does not have to be the subject of the sentence; it may perform, as an anacoluthon, any nominal function that will be carried out by a resumptive personal pronoun in the proper place.

These cases of anacoluthon may cause other internal changes based on attraction, especially with the verb كان، which may precede the noun anacoluthon (see Vol. II, § 180):

إنما أكثر هذه السماوي إنما تدار فيها يبارة النجوم والقمر
In the majority of shops there was only a trade of coffee and soap.
Hus. ayy. II,11,14

The emphatic statement introduced by إنما is frequently understood as being in opposition to a preceding term, statement, or another situation; thus it becomes, in some ways, a restrictive definition. Based on these cases, Arab grammarians usually call إنما a "restrictive particle," even though this is not its most common meaning; it is actually used to emphasize the statement it presents, e.g.,

الفي الأثنا عشرة بالأمر لا لأيام
The Alfiyya is for the students of al-Azhar, not for those of the schools.
Hus. ayy. 1,77,13
He decided to have him marry and chose Amina for him. He went with him to the settlement of the Banu Zuhra and visited Wahb with him and asked for his daughter's hand for him. Some historians, however, believe that he went rather to Uhaib, Amina's uncle, because her father had already died and she was under her uncle's tutelage. Hai. sir. 107,9

In this function, إِنَّا is often used to emphasize the second member of a correlative proposition, especially when the first part is a negative statement. In this case, إِنَّا introduces the second statement, to which it is usually connected by the conjunction 

1) either with an adversative meaning:

He was not concerned with these voices..., but he was very much afraid of other voices.
Hus. ayy. I,8,2

The school teacher did not sing with his voice and tongue only but also with his head and body.
Hus. ayy. I,32,7

When he left the school, he did not go home but went with some comrades to the mosque to say his evening prayer.
Hus. ayy. I,56,4

2) or with a restrictive meaning:

He who has a happy life does not record it, he only lives it.
Hak. yam. 5,2

for she does not live by herself or for herself, she only lives by and for man.
Q. Am. (zy.) 5,30

We have no right to inquire in this way; we must simply believe.
Gibr. I,115,4

إِنَّا may also introduce the second part of a subordinate correlative:

We must study Arabic literary productions, not to emulate them in their aims and their styles, but rather to learn our cultural history from them.
Musa adab. 64,6

Since إِنَّا actually does not have a connecting function, it may also emphasize a main clause as opposed to a subordinated one:

If I could be amazed at anything, it would be at your tranquility and the steadiness of your spirit.
Hus. 'ala. III,207,5

§ 239 إِنَّا AS INDEFINITE PARTICLE

The same relative particle early became one of emphatic indetermination always following the substantive it modifies:
Don't you have any opinion?
Mah. qah. 10,13

But I shall go some day.
Mah. qah. 59,14

We have nothing whatsoever in common.
Hak. ahl. 130,16

That is so to some extent.
Musa abad. 162,3

But, for some reason, a strange idea occurred to him.
Hus. ayy. I,19,8

Note that ًّا as an indefinite particle is never written as a single word; nevertheless, the Arabic editions of books frequently require the assimilation of the nunation into the m of the particle. This assimilation is in some text editions graphically expressed with the sign for reduplication (\textit{shadāda}), e.g.,

\textit{ānā} a certain affair.
Manf. mag. 15,11

Hence, the use of ًّا becomes generalized to that of a particle which emphasizes indetermination (also see indefinite-conditional clauses, Vol. III, p. 353ff.)

a) as a paronomastic repetition, ًّاً, "whatever":

\begin{align*}
\text{ًّاً} & \text{ ِّيِسَ ِّيِسَ ِّيِسِّي} \quad \text{ٌّيِسَ ِّيِسِّي} \\
\text{ِّيِسِّي} & \text{ لَمْ َّيِسَ ِّيِسِّي} \\
\text{ِّيِسَ} & \text{ لَمْ َّيِسَ ِّيِسَ}
\end{align*}

No matter what the boy might forget, he never will a night....
Hus. ayy. I,92,3

b) suffixed to certain adverbs, e.g.,

\text{ِّيِسِّي} ُّيِسَ\text{ مَّارَةً} أَيُّنَّا كَانَ
It considered him blessed wherever he went.
Hai. sir. 3,2

Wherever we go, there are just the two of us, and our shadow and chimera.
Hak. sheh. 151,1

(For more on this construction see Vol. III, p. 354ff.)
(On the use of ًّا, see Vol. III, p. 92f., and on the use of ًّاً, see Vol. III, p. 305f.)

§ 240 Paronomasia in a Pronominal Relative Clause

The indefinite meaning of the relative pronouns leads, as a logical consequence, to their use in paronomastic relative constructions

a) to emphasize the indetermination of the main clause:

\text{كاَنَّ عِلىَ الْمَعْلُومَةَ} مِنْ عََّادَ فَدَعَلَ
Some returned to Abyssinia and some entered into Mecca.
Hai. sir. 160,10

[The doctor] prescribed some things and ordered some others.
Hus. ayy. I,130,12

مَا كَانَ مَسَّهُ أَمْرٌ
Some of them died.
Hai. sir. 102,18

رَأَيْسِ أَمَّهُ مَأْرَةً
Some doubts concerning him came to my mind.
Manf. (Sy.) 30,4

Note the effect caused by this emphatic indetermination in the following:

\text{كَانَ الْمَتَّى} بِذُوَّادَ كَلْ بِذُوَّادَةٍ
The epidemic became increasingly virulent and countless soldiers died every day.
Hai. sir. 102,19

b) to achieve a special emphasis:
Her most remarkable feature was her two beautiful black eyes. Mah. zuq. 32,2

or. a) to paraphrase an indefinite pronoun:

in the study of whatever I wished.
Hai. sit. 19,13

The first thing I felt was... Raf. wah. I,111,18

that something similar to what happened racially also occurred in their cultures.
Amin duh. I,169,15

§ 241 ADVERBIAL USES OF ʿI

As we have already seen, the relative pronoun ʿI may be used referring not only to animals and inanimate objects, but to their qualities as well and also to those of persons. Hence ʿI can also be used to express circumstantial (temporal and modal) modifications of the action expressed in the main clause. As a consequence of the indefinite meaning of ʿI, the modifications it introduces always have an indefinite connotation only to some extent specified in the light of the relative clause.

Cf. the use of the interrogative ʿI as an interrogative adverbial in Vol. I, ʾ43:

What has honor to do with literature?
Musa adab. 47,14

What does it interest us where the majority lives? Jabr. (Br.) 69,20

In the adverbial usage of ʿI, it seems to be essential for the relative pronoun to assume an adverbial function in the relative clause. In this instance, ʿI never takes a resumptive pronoun.

Independent of its adverbial function within the relative clause, ʿI may fulfill the function of a nominative, genitive, or accusative in the main clause.

Arab grammarians of Arabic, and most Western scholars with them, compare the adverbial use of ʿI with noun clauses introduced by ʿI and ʿI and give the relative pronoun the name of "infinitival ʿI." This equivalence, however, cannot be accepted, for it does not explain the syntactical differences between both constructions, such as the perfect after the relative pronoun to mean the future; this use is not admitted after the other particles.

It draws one's attention to the action, and ʿI emphasizes the logical subject of the statement following it always indicates an indefinite circumstantial modification of the subordinated clause in its relationship to the action expressed in the main clause.

In most cases, the Sprachgefühl of native Arabs unites different words with ʿI as if they were seeing a compound particle of adverbial or conjunctival nature. In our translations of the examples used in the following paragraphs, we shall necessarily use adverbial and conjunctival words, or even phrases, in order to express their English equivalent.

Nevertheless, they cannot be considered as simple conjunctions or adverbs, for their use is still most often determined by the same rules as those applying to a relative clause. In other cases, the linguistic intuition of the native speakers and writers of Arabic has given those expressions more freedom of use and a greater flexibility in their construction, which, however, is still not sufficient to establish them in a different grammatical category.

In the following paragraphs, we shall try to present the most common and characteristic constructions in which the relative pronoun is used in an adverbial function in the relative clause.

§ 242 THE ADVERBIAL RELATIVE CLAUSE FUNCTIONING AS A NOMINATIVE

A ʿI, "The time during which...has been lumpy"; hence, its meaning is equivalent to a temporal adverb.
"very long," "how long." The expression is frequently preceded by the emphatic particle ل .

is used in this construction only in the perfect tense and, because of its preterit meaning, it is followed only by a relative clause expressing a statement of fact about a past action with the verb in the perfect tense:

**إِلَّاَ الذِّي طَالَّ مَاتِمَتَتْ عَنْهَا:**
I never will forget that night on which I spoke to you so long about her.
Hak. ahl. 31,4

**لَمْ تُذْرِبْ أَرْوَ الْمَكَّة:**
I have wished to visit your kingdom for a long time.
Hak. sul. 84,4

**لَمْ تُذْرِبْ أَرْوَ الْمَكَّة:**
I have been waiting for you a long time!
Hak. sul. 76,4

also introduces a consideration of the repetition of an action during an extended period of time: "how many times," "how frequently":

**بِجَلْبِ الْأَصْبَاهُ الْمَاسِمَةِ الْعَدْدُ الْأَثِرّ:**
with this soft and pleasant voice he had heard so many times before.
Manf. may. 186,10

**طَالَّ الْفَسَدَةَ بِبَعْرَ السِّبْرِ:**
Many times have I heard him, alone, raving.
Gibr. I,103,5

**طَالَّ الْفَسَدَةَ بِبَعْرَ السِّبْرِ:**
Many times he said about them....
Mah. zuq. 220,18

and on the way we quite often exchanged ideas about everything.
Hind. (2y.) 32,4

**طَالَّ مَدَرَكَ الْكِتَابَةِ إِلَى يَرْثِكَة:**
How often I have warned you against writing to Prisca.
Hak. ahl. 15,5

**طَالَّ مَدَرَكَ الْكِتَابَةِ إِلَى يَرْثِكَة:**
How often I have told and advised you....
Mah. zuq. 46,4

People in these days do not want [to have] a poet, but have asked for a radio many times.
Mah. zuq. 11,2

**قَدْ طَالَّ الْعَيْنَةَ الْمَسْتَيْتَ وَالْأَطْلِسَةَ:**
How frequently dark things seem to glitter [when seen] through tears.
Gibr. II,88,5

**قَدْ طَالَّ الْعَيْنَةَ الْمَسْتَيْتَ وَالْأَطْلِسَةَ:**
Very frequently its ministers...had said that the position of France in the Mediterranean would be upset if it left Syria.
Raith. mul. 346,19

Also, also frequently preceded by the emphatic particle ل , is in some ways the counterpart of mentioned above. It literally means "The occasion, or time during which...seldom occurs": hence, its equivalence to a simple adverbial modification, "seldom," "rarely," and the like.

is usually followed by a perfect tense, but the verb may also be in the imperfect indicative when the meaning requires it:

**قَدْ طَالَّ الْعَيْنَةَ الْمَسْتَيْتَ وَالْأَطْلِسَةَ:**
Very seldom has there been a beautiful woman loved by a man having other wives, against whom the other wives and people did not unite. Hai. sir. 359,19

That is because Bahrain's waters are seldom empty of the boats which always roam freely on them.
Raith. mul. 199,5
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

A child may complain, but his mother very seldom pays any attention to him. Hus. ayy. I,120,8

Note the meaning of  فلا  in the following:

طأ ف مجال م ل ل حرب  This way did not seem to him to be very straight. Hus. ayy. II,4,6

Compare with the following relative constructions:

والله أ س لم يم م أو  And only a few of the poets neither rode nor participated in raids. Djr. tar. I,142,3

فً في لا ما هو أجل وفعا في المفعوم من أنفسه من There are few things which cause a more wonderful impression on the soul than.... Raah. mul. 34,11

(Also see Vol. III, p. 187.)

C In the expression,  كغيرا ما , "The times/ occasions during which...were numerous," the relative clause may be considered to function as subject of the verb  كان . The relative pronoun  ما usually assumes an adverbial function of temporal meaning in the relative clause. Since classical times, however, it has been viewed as a compound expression with the verb  كان governing the verb following; thus in the relative clause only the imperfect is used with a preterit meaning:

كان كغيرا ما  He frequently woke up.... Hus. ayy. I,7,12

كان كغيرا ما  The Prophet frequently spoke in a state of completely normal wakefulness. Hai. sir. 40,20

بعن كغيرا ما  Though the afternoon silence frequently put him to sleep.... Hus. ayy. II,38,20

ADVERBIAL RELATIVE CLAUSE AS NOMINATIVE

The use of the subject of the subordinate clause in the main clause may lead to the assumption that it is also the subject of  ك، and this, therefore, will be brought into agreement with it:

اذن كاتب المقالة كيرا ما  Then slave girls very frequently studied literature. Amin duh. I,93,16

Thus the use of the verb  كا is not always felt necessary to the expression which, in its absence, has the meaning of a present or an imperfect:

كيرا ما يرى في خلق الشيخ  How often we see in an older man's nature what brings him close to childhood. Qal. (Zy.) 21,5

كيرا ك يقيد السلطان عبد العزيز  Frequently Sultan 'Abd al-Aziz would halt in an important speech to.... Raah. mul. 56,12

إذا آمن أن يملى حضنة كيرا ما  When he wanted to show his anger, which he often used to do, he made good use of his coarse voice. Mah. qay. 31,21

إذا جا كيرا ما أعلم  When there was a difference of opinion, and this used to happen frequently.... Mah. zug. 19,5

كيرا ما  Many times this eulogy ended in real tears. Hus. ayy. I,26,3

لكي كيرا ما بلغنا  But the past chases us exactly as it does nations. Jabr. (Br.) 71,24

ذلك كيرا ما أعلم  That is because I frequently come across the Romanic heritage.... Musa adab. 65,5
For a preterital meaning, the perfect is used:

Ofttimes has vanity led women to abandon husbands who are poor.
Gibr. I, 124, 17

that I, in my innermost soul, have often envied him....
Manf. sha'. 259, 6

An imperfect in the relative clause may be given preterital meaning by using within the clause rather than preceding the expression:

Very frequently it made him cry.
Hus. ayy. I, 26, 7

The expression 가끔 (kaqîn) "seldom," "rarely," can be used as a counterpart of the preceding expression:

very seldom can they cook.
Amin (Zy.) 26, 45

Compare with (see Vol. III, p. 178):

only the strong and they are very few.
Hus. ayy. II, 76, 17

which has the same meaning as above:

His face very seldom changed. Mah. qah. 31, 20

F "Now... was intense"; hence it is used as an expression of emphasis: "violently," "very much," "exceedingly," "greatly." It is frequently preceded by the particle ن and introduces a verbal sentence in which it always functions adverbially.
The verb of the relative clause may be in the perfect with preterital meaning:

I was greatly amazed.
Kam. (Zy.) 4, 44

My bewilderment and frustration were great when...
Haih. mul. 34, 3

or in the imperfect with the meaning of a present:

I wish very much....
Hal. sir. 26, 10

It gives me a real pleasure to....
al-Raf. (Zy.) 19, 17

Darkness! How I loathe its color!
Hak. sheh. 157, 8

It amazes me greatly that a man like you believes in such stories.
Mah. gah. 9, 13

G "soon!" is composed of the accusative of exclamation (see Vol. II, § 105) and the relative pronoun which introduces a verbal sentence in which it functions as an adverbial accusative. The exclamatory affect usually fades and becomes an emphasis of the expression which is thus generally to be translated as "very soon," "very quickly."

I took a seat for a moment in the waiting room, and very soon the girl returned saying with a smile....
S. Din (Br.) 60, 1
Subordinate Clauses

The force with which Islam spread very soon brought it face to face with Christianity....
Hai. sir. 2,12
The boy's hand was very soon brought forward toward his father, not to defend himself, but....
Tai. (Br.) 124,19

§ 243 The Adverbial Relative Clause Functioning as a Genitive

A "كلما", "in the (same) manner of/as," is usually followed by a paraconismatic construction:

كُلُّمَا: "You don't know humankind as well as I do."
Hak. (Br.) 39,10
كُتْبُ: "I have abandoned it and everybody in it, as a prisoner leaves his exile."
Gibr. I,145,15
كُلُّمَا: "They led me as one who sees leads the blind."
Gibr. I,135,14
كُلُّمَا: "They take part in the creation of the new renaissance as men do."
Sa'. (Sy.) 6,36
كُتْبُ: "O Salma! I shall remember you as the lonesome stranger remembers his beloved country."
Gibr. II,49,14
كُلُّمَا: "I live here as I did when...."
Gibr. III,88,5

Adverbial Relative Clause as Genitive

(Compare with كلما, Vol. III, p. 187f.)

كُلُّمَا: "in the interval of," "in the time...":
Then come back to me as quick as a wink [in the time in which I close and open my eyes].
Hus. ayy. I,31,2
كُلُّمَا: "each time when...", "as often as...", "whenever":
as he liked to say whenever he was asked about love and women.
Mah. gah. 155,14
كُلُّمَا: "It shows in his eyes as often as he looks at me."
Manf. sha'. 100,13
كُلُّمَا: "Although the boy was very fond of counting the steps whenever he went up or down a stairway...."
Hus. ayy. II,5,9
كُلُّمَا: "as often as people [tried] to coerce her into marriage, she was heard saying...."
Hak. ahl. 43,11
كُتْبُ: "(A hair) whenever it becomes grey, she pulls it out."
Hak. sheh. 154,8
كُلُّمَا: "As often as Death looks behind, we lose a thousand."
Gibr. III,73,9

(Compare كلما, Vol. III, p. 187f.)

When كلما follows the main clause, it may introduce an elliptical construction in order to avoid the repetition of elements already mentioned:
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

Literary values... change as often as circumstances do. Musa adab. 88,3

may also introduce the idea of progression of the action: "the more..." rather than its repetition: "as often as":

All of them would inhale this delicious aroma which the fire would extract from the food, the closer it was to being ready. Hus. ayy. II,50,4

With the indefinite meaning of "whenever," the perfect after كَانَ may have a nonpreterital significance; the verb in the main clause may then be in the jussive (also see Vol. III, p. 353ff.)

Whenever you go away from that tribe and from that city, whenever you go away from al-Arid toward the North or East, you leave this excess of religion. Raih. mul. 81,20

The correlative idea, "the more...the more," is also stated by this expression. كَانَ كَانَ with the relative clause must precede the main clause in order to present this idea:

The more the lame boy went on walking, the longer his [shadow] became. 'Aww. (Br.) 21,14

The more a man becomes just and wise, the more righteous he becomes in his aim. Amin duh. III,47,4

The deeper he penetrated into it, the denser and higher it became. Tai. (Zy.) 9,22

ADVERBIAL RELATIVE CLAUSE AS GENITIVE

The more you meditate [about it], the more meaningful it becomes. Ref. wah. III,8,4

When the subordinated clause precedes the main clause, the verb كَانَ may be used before the former in order to lend a preterital meaning to the construction:

The longer the silence lasted, the greater was his restraint. Mah. gah. 133,7

The more full of misery his fate had become, the more his patience and love had grown. Mah. zug. 14,3

Every time he appeared, we followed him with our eyes. Tai. (Zy.) 9,9

The verb in the main clause may be in the imperfect to express a progression in the past and thus it is also governed by كَانَ:

But the more I continued my research, the more I saw questions rising before me. Hai. sir. 20,3

D "in the first time of/when," hence, "as soon as," "the moment when," "at the beginning of," "when":

It was not my aim at the beginning of my research.... Hai. sir. 20,13

At the beginning of each day we praise the Prophet. Mah. zug. 9,20
When his illness became serious, Mohammed had seven dinars in his possession.

Hai. sir. 502,10

that the Prophet told him, on their arrival, too....

Hai. sir. 497,2

for a novel needs personality first of all.

Musa adab. 182,2

(Compare this usage with...

أَوْلًَا مَا أَلْسَنَ, Vol. III, p. 188.)

may be in the genitive after a preposition:

We heard the Koran as freshly and newly as when the Revelation had first been given.

Raf. (Sy.) 20,32

فَعَلَ كَأَنَّ أَقْرَأَهَا مَا نَزَّلَتْ عَلَى النَّبِي.

Aban ibn Sa'id met him as soon as he reached Mecca.

Hai. sir. 371,16

لَا هُمْ لَأَنْ لاَ عَلَيْهَا أَبَا بُنَانٍ مَعَهُ

with the women who had hurried to her as soon as they heard the news.

Hai. sir. 505,10

كَانَتْ بَيْنَهَا أَبَا بُنَانٍ كَأَنَّا كَأَلْبَيْنَوْا بَيْنَ السَّكْرَب

She always smiled like the first glow of dawn.

Raf. wah. 1,101,7

E... "in the moment of/when," hence, "as soon as":

وَعِينَانَ حَيْلًا بَيْنَ إِلَى الْعَفْرَ بَيْنَ عِينَيْنَ وَ...

As soon as he reaches the bottom, he opens his eyes and....

Raih. mul. 218,4

F... "in the (same) measure of/as," "as much as." It is either in the accusative or in the genitive after a preposition:

أَوْلًَا مَا كَرَهْتُ هذَا أَقْرَأَهَا مَا نَزَّلَتْ عَلَى النَّبِي.

I love them as much as I detect what....

Musa adab. 41,3

يَقُولُ مَا يَلْبِقُهُمَّ هذَا الْفَكْرَةَ يَجْعَلُونَ حُكْمَهَا يَعْقِبُونَها.

The more they talk about this idea the less they understand its reality.

Jabr. (Br.) 70,4

الْفِيْقِيَةُ لَهُمْ لَيْسَ نَاحِيَةٌ

Today his real concern was not caused so much by Ma'mun's rift with him as it was by the thought of Ali Taha and his love.

Mah. qah. 155,11

هَكَمَآ عَلَى قَدْرِهِ آتَيْتُهُ

It treats you as you treat it.

Raf. wah. III,8,5

مَا ذَلِكَ إِنَّا لَا أَكْتَبُمُ اللَّظَافَاتِ

Nevertheless, I was not so impressed by the works of this great writer as I was by his life.

Musa adab. 176,17

G... رِمْنَةً is actually a compound of the adverbial and the verbal noun رَيْتُهُ, "delay." It indicates the validity of the action expressed in the main clause "until" or "while" a future event happens. Thus it usually takes the imperfect in the relative clause with the meaning of a future projection in relation to the action of the main clause:

آَوْلَيْنَ عَلَى البَيْتِ وَالْعَمْرَ رِمْنَةً

I motioned for him to remain silent till Leonardo had finished playing.

Nu'. lq. 111,8

يَبْسُطُ لِعَبْضِهَا وَيُعْلِبُ لِعَبْضِهَا

And Leonardo would only stay there until we found a way to smuggle him outside the border.

Nu'. lq. 03,8
I asked them to sit in the lobby so that we could have a glass of champagne. Din (St.) 3,29

But this happiness only lasted until the next horrible misfortune. Hus. ayy. I,64,15

That is a period of reflection and waiting until I find a way to become engaged in public life. Mah. gah. 81,5

But it may also take the verb in the perfect tense when referring to a past action:

John remained silent until he recovered his breath. Gibr. I,95,20

It may be followed by two coordinated clauses:

At the entrance of the cave I stood still for a moment while my racing blood slowed its pace and I recovered my regular breathing. Nu'. liq. 68,9

Hijmat, "at the time of/when," hence, "when," "while":

[A look] which ended in tears when he thought that soon he would leave this house. Manf. mag. 53,8

On his return to the hut in the evening, the lame boy would receive his share of thirty-four blows. 'Aww. (Br.) 14,3

\( \text{I ask them to sit in the lobby so that we could have a glass of champagne.} \)

\( \text{But this happiness only lasted until the next horrible misfortune.} \)

\( \text{That is a period of reflection and waiting until I find a way to become engaged in public life.} \)

\( \text{John remained silent until he recovered his breath.} \)

\( \text{It may be followed by two coordinated clauses:} \)

\( \text{At the entrance of the cave I stood still for a moment while my racing blood slowed its pace and I recovered my regular breathing.} \)

\( \text{A look] which ended in tears when he thought that soon he would leave this house.} \)

\( \text{On his return to the hut in the evening, the lame boy would receive his share of thirty-four blows.} \)
to my tent to write tomorrow's letter to Roxane, and it might be the last one.
Manf. shah'. 206,11

Perhaps I shall return to you shortly.
Manf. shah'. 241,5

for he is stronger than you and he might kill you. Manf. shah'. 33,3

Perhaps it is in your power to make a dog out of me....
Hak. sūl. 44,5

After َُّرَُُّّ, the imperfect may also be used to refer to the present:
"I do believe, My Lady, I do believe, but perhaps I do not understand."
Hak. ahl. 166,5

As an adverbial compound, it may be used after a relative pronoun:
"It would take him a week to learn what Ma'mun did in perhaps two days.
Mah. qah. 22,23

and to introduce a sentence or a main clause:
May God bestow his favors on me! Nu'. kan. 71,8

When boredom overcame her, at times she forgot her wisdom and remembered the shortcomings of her life.
Mah. qah. 163,2

or to introduce a single part of a sentence:

then here in this very hall, and perhaps even in this place where we stand now.
Hak. ahl. 46,1

"more/most frequently", "extremely", "most" and the like, are used introducing a verbal sentence:

His father waited for this moment with the greatest expectation.
Hus. ayy. I, 83,6

He was very much concerned about what would happen to the cause of Islam.
Hai. sir. 263,20

Very frequently a slaver would own them in order to display them singing.
Amin duh. I, 96,16

But most often when they dedicated themselves to it, the incentive was religious.
Amin duh. I, 101,16

(Compare with the cases of non-adverbial َُّرَُُّّ mentioned above, Vol. III, p. 188.)

They may also follow the subject of the sentence or an anacoluthon (see Vol. II, § 180):

This I hear most frequently in Egypt.
Kurd (Sy.) 28,27

He was very much concerned about the outcome of that day.
Hai. sir. 263,20
The Koreish] was now most afraid of....
Hai. sir. 169,22
I received the violin from him very gently, almost humbly.
Nu'. liq. 19,4

They may also be preceded by ل as an exclamatory particle (see Vol. II, § 105):

The Muslims began seizing the booty, and it was immense!
Hai. sir. 297,14

How greatly Mohammed shared their yearning....
Hai. sir. 364,18

Note that in coordinated constructions the exclamatory formular expression does not have to be repeated:

How greatly Mohammed shared their yearning, and how greatly did he assure them that this day was near!
Hai. sir. 364,18

K لَا "what," "which," in the adverbial accusative and with an exclamatory meaning (see Vol. I, § 45) may introduce a relative paronomastic nominal sentence. The nominal predicate of لَا undergoes case attraction and is considered to be in the genitive case. 27

It gave him a great joy to....
Mah. qah. 14,17

27. The genitive ending, as a rule, cannot be ascertained in unvocalized texts.

ARABIC

He found great pleasure in saying....
Mah. qah. 22,18
His life became completely upset. Mah. qah. 53,2

§ 244 THE ADVERBIAL RELATIVE CLAUSE FUNCTIONING AS AN ACCUSATIVE

The relative pronoun لَا functioning as an indefinite adverbial within the subordinate clause can assume for the main clause at the same time the role of an adverbial accusative expressing a temporal modification of the action of the main clause.

In such cases, since لَا introduces a temporal modification that accompanies the action of the main clause, it always implies simultaneity, at the same time stating the duration of its action. Arab grammarians call the relative pronoun لَا "of duration."
The verb in the clause is generally used in the perfect tense, with the meaning of the future:

I shall be thankful to you for your kindness as long as I live.
Manf. sha'. 261,16

We shall be jealous as long as we love.
Mah. qah. 145,22

He asked him to perform the prayer and to give alms as long as he might live. Hai. sir. 3,2

As long as I give you the power to....
Hak. sul. 136,9

also with a preterital meaning:
and as an indefinite present:

All words are beautiful as long as the lips that say them are beautiful.
Manf. sha'. 103,12

which is necessary for every child as long as there is a child.
Raf. wah. I,87,2

which would hide under the ground as long as the sun shines and people move about.
Hus. ayy. I,7,7

The temporal indetermination introduced by ُذا may receive a specification through the use of a prepositional phrase with مِن that we have slept as many years as you wish.
Hak. ahl. 78,10

The temporal modification may refer to a subordinate clause:

[You] travel as much as you want to.
Hak. sheh. 89,12

The subordinate clause may be understood:

Stay on earth as long as you wish.
Hak. (Br.) 42,20

The adverbial ُذا after prepositions

may also introduce a modal modification:

He pursued knowledge as much as he could and knowledge fled from him as much as it could.
Hus. ayy. II,92,16

It lets itself be led as you lead it.
Raf. wah. III,8,6

The temporal modification may, at times, present a logical relationship:

Since we have described the mercy of wealth....
Raf. wah. III,14,9

You, too, since you asked for my confidence.
Hak. sul. 71,9

But I cannot understand why you don't open your heart to her, since you love her and are a relative of hers.
Manf. sha'. 66,2

§ 245 THE ADVERBIAL ُذا AFTER PREPOSITIONS

Although prepositional compounds governing an adverbial ُذا are more frequently used in modern times than they were in medieval Arabic, they do not represent an innovation nor does their number seem to have increased considerably.

Such compounds can be and, in fact, usually are considered as conjunctual compounds. It is, however, difficult to decide to what extent they have actually become conjunctions. On the one hand, some of them go as far in some cases as to introduce a noun clause preceded by ُذا; this would seem to point to their conjunctual character, since such a construction would not be admissible after a relative
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

pronoun. On the other hand, their flexibility in admitting an explicative prepositional phrase with من, and even, at times, an easy substitution in many cases by the relative adjective آل، speaks for the retention of their relative character.

The fact that these compounds are only used to express temporal or modal aspects of statements of a (real) fact can be explained as a consequence of this relative character. They are never used to express actions contrary to fact or those conditioned upon another action.

A "when", "while," "whilst," is also used in its shortened form، with the same meaning and construction. It is at times further shortened, perhaps under the influence of dialectical forms, with the end result of من، which is completely identical with that of the preposition alone (see examples below).

While we were returning to our tent that night, we went by....
Raith. mul. 68,13

The adverbial من may also follow the main clause:

It happened that the stick hit the candle while the lame boy was raising it against his Uncle Ibrahim.
'Aww. (Br.) 20,18

The temporal clause introduced by من may function as an appositive of an adverb or adverbial phrase which has a temporal meaning:

At that moment, as Rachel, Maryam and Khalil were seated around a wooden table, the servants of Sheikh 'Abbas knocked on the door and entered....
Gibr. I,181,6

A moment later, while they are looking at him in apprehensive silence.
Hak. ahl. 79,13

The action of the main clause, when following the subordinate one, frequently seems to have a certain connotation of an unexpected event. This effect can be emphasized by the adverbial demonstrative من، or the expression من introduced the main clause:

While I was returning to my house one night, my ignorance of the way in the darkness suddenly brought me to....
Manf. (Zy.) 30,7

While you are looking at your bird...he suddenly leaves you and flies away.
Gibr. I,109,20
The subordinating effect of the particle fades at times to the point that it can be used to express the validity of two different statements at the same time:

\[ \text{While I was thinking about that, I suddenly saw one of those villains.... Manf. sha'} \, 130,14 \]

But he did not like 'Ali, nor did he dislike Ma'mun. Mah. qah. 69,3

**Note** that ُنيماً may introduce a noun clause preceded by

\[ \text{while we mostly still are alien and hostile to this way of life. Zur. (Zy.) 18,10} \]

\[ \text{B ُنيماً, "while," is followed by a nominal sentence or a verbal one with inverted word order. Since it always expresses the idea of a continuous action, the verb is in the imperfect; its meaning will either refer to the past or not, according to the context:} \]

\[ \text{Once, while he was sleeping in the cave, an angel came to him. Hai. sir. 133,3} \]

\[ \text{and, once, while Mohammed and Khadija were praying, 'Ali suddenly went in to them. Hai. sir. 139,21} \]

\[ \text{While they were approaching the burial ground behind the temple, Tahya asked him.... Mah. qah. 74,14} \]

\[ \text{While he was thinking about this...he felt.... Hus. ayy. I,143,14} \]

While he was peacefully sleeping, he suddenly began to shiver and his breathing became difficult. Hai. sir. 136,4

(For other functions and meanings of ُنيماً, see Vol. II, § 127.)

ج١ ُنيماً presents the specific and concrete moment in which the action of the main clause, depending on whether the stress is intended for the idea presented by the main clause or by the temporal occasion.

It generally introduces a verbal sentence with normal word order and is thus followed by a verb. It is used with the perfect to express the past:

\[ \text{I was eighteen years of age when destiny led me to Rashid. Gibr. I,113,4} \]

\[ \text{But I was greatly amazed when I heard another lawyer saying.... Kam. (Zy.) 4,44} \]

or with the imperfect to express the present, usually with an indefinite meaning:

\[ \text{When we attempt to consider and to examine carefully such questions, we must.... Hus. (Br.II) 75,10} \]

\[ \text{Then later they regret their impulsiveness, when regret becomes an occasion of scorn and ridicule instead of remission and forgiveness. Gibr. I,100,10} \]
I am often sad when I find a student of literature in Egypt talking about style as if it were something that can be known. Musa adab. 19,9

When we examine literature in Egypt...we must not forget.... Musa adab. 97,2

mabar is a word which they repeat when the diver pulls the cord with his foot. Rainh. mul. 218,23

At times the perfect in the subordinate clause has the meaning of an indefinite present: "as soon as," "whenever":

"Look, my Lord, how these weeping children become furious lions in an instant as soon as they hear the call of their country."  
Manf. sha'. 209,15

The verb كان may precede the subordinate clause, giving a preterital meaning to the construction:

Nevertheless, whenever I said "Nejed," she answered, "Iraq."  
Rainh. mul. 23,10

D کا introduces a comparison: "as," "just as," "in the same way as," or a parallelism: "as also," "as on the other hand." In both cases, since the relative pronoun کا necessarily points out the actual and real circumstances of the statement expressed in the relative clause, the syntactical function of the compound is more that of a coordination than of an actual subordination. کا in this compound seems to have kept its relative character almost completely, as we can see when the relative pronoun is substituted for it in a pronominal function (see Vol. III, p. 168ff.):

They do not know laws as we know [them], nor do they obey any established order as we do.  
Hai. sir. 79,2

It is obvious that nations differ in their characteristics as their peoples do. Amin duh. 1,5,3

In comparisons as well as in parallelisms, کا usually introduces a verbal sentence:

Christianity does not acknowledge Mohammed's prophethood as Islam does that of Jesus.  
Hai. sir. 5,18

that my expression had amused him as nothing ever had [before].  
Maz. (Sy.) I,15

But the past often chases us exactly as it does nations.  
Jabr. (Br.) 71,24

His brother did not hear them that night, the same as he never had before.  
Hus. ayy. II,42,11

He was not poor at that time as he was said to be.  
Hus. ayy. II,54,2

India had philosophy at that time, as did Greece.  
Amin duh. I,246,8

We became different, as two trees closely rooted do in fruit and form.  
Manf. mag. 7,11
Not even in such situations did he believe in love as 'Ali Taha knew it.
Mah. gah. 155,16

His wealth increased, as well as the number of his sons and his standing among his people.
Hai. sir. 95,13

(For cases of nominal sentences following كا see Vol. III, p. 239.)

The repetition required by this parallelism brings forth a series of constructions in which the adverbial relative clause precedes parts which in fact belong in the main clause:

كاكا أموت كا كنت أبدا
I never will be as I was.
Mah. gah. 36,15

كاكا ما زال كا كان قد كبر
that he still was, as before his journey to
Cairo, of little importance.
Hus. ay. 17,122,4

كاكا كان المعبود إلى سكينه كا لا
The Jews up to that time remembered, as they still do, Jesus' rebellion
against them.
Hai. sir. 81,6

كاكا قد كان أماؤها كا لا يزال
Its population, as most
of them are even today, consisted of Badouins.
Hai. sir. 78,21

When the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, the former may be reintroduced in the latter by means of a modal adverb:

كاكا السبي كا في السماء
Thy will be done on earth
as it is in heaven.
Gibr. I,87,15

In the same way that Mohammed became familiar with the routes of the caravans in the desert...
and listened to the poets..., so he learned how to carry arms.
Hai. sir. 116,6

كاكا introduces a nominal sentence directly only when the relative pronoun in the nominal sentence functions as an adverbial predicate; thus it is followed by a substantive in the nominative case:

أبوتبا النور كا هي حق نسوا
Leave the lights as they are until we come back.
Manf. sha'. 60,5

أبوتبا النور كا هي حق نسوا
for his place in my heart is still the same
as it ever was.
Manf. sha'. 255,3

أبوتبا النور كا هي حق نسوا
They took the foreign words [into Arabic] at
times without change.
Amin duh. I,182,14

أبوتبا النور كا هي حق نسوا
for he will see you as
you are.
Manf. mag. 139,13

Otherwise, the nominal sentence is introduced by
كاكا with the meaning of "as well as." This is actually no different from the preceding construction, since
the nominal sentence with the particle كاكا can be considered as being the subject (i.e., a noun clause
with the function of a subject): "as the fact is, that..."

كاكا كأبتبا الم بطمة كاكا
as well as this Great
Spirit who..., in his
desire for perfection
detested the pleasures
for which the people of
Mecca strove.
Hai. sir. 118,10
But it always remained the basis of these cultures which formed the world's destinies, as well as having a great influence on the culture of the present era.

**Hai. sir. 67,11**

The president of the Senate was a lawyer as well.

**Kam. (Sy.) 4,6**

Misery is the destiny of the wretched as happiness is that of the fortunate.

**Hus. (Br.) 94,14**

But joy is very contagious, as sadness also is.

**Hus. ayy. II,84,19**

is frequently followed by and thus introduces a contrary-to-fact conditional clause which takes the meaning of the hypothetical comparison, "as if":

**She took the matter [as lightly] as if it were about the weather.**

**Nu'. lig. 33,4**

as if you would be looking at it from another firmament, not from the earth.

**Raf. wah. I,51,10**

as if he were wealthy, with money and property, although he actually only owned the house....

**Mah. zuq. 13,8**

(For more on **نو** , see Vol. III, p. 320ff.)

"as though," introduces a nominal or verbal sentence which has the meaning of a hypothetical comparison:

He emphasized his words as though he wanted to fasten them onto the ears of his listeners.

**Hus. ayy. II,56,7**

He remained motionless as if sunk in a deep lethargy.

**Mah. qah. 36,20**

His ears were filled with wonderful harmonious sounds like celestial music.

**Hai. sir. 119,14**

The hypothetical comparison may refer to a circumstance introduced by a subordinate clause:

**Her lips moved as if to speak.**

**Mah. qah. 135,14**

E **"over," "above," "more than," introduces a modal comparison:**

**He twisted his chin to the left [even] more than God had already done.**

**'Aww. (Br.) 11,20**

F **"more than," and like expressions have a comparative adverbial meaning and usually introduce a verbal sentence:**

**though I love her more than you do.**

**Hak. shah. 122,16**

in two hours or more and I wished it had lasted longer than that.

**Amin (Br.) 88,6**

Since the visit had been only to get acquainted, he did not want it to last longer than it already had.

**Mah. qah. 143,17**
His voice grew softer than it already was.
Ras. ayy. II, 62, 6

It introduces a nominal sentence only when functions as adverbial predicate (see Vol. I, § 7):
The sky above the sea seems to you greater than it is. Raf. wah. I, 51, 10

G يأ أَن introduces an adverbial modification with a logical meaning of "since," "inasmuch as":

Since his master did not know the way, I hired a guide as well.
Raith. (Z.) 23, 21

§ 246 ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

An adverbial clause, as its name indicates, assumes in the compound the function of an adverb. It expresses circumstances, modal, temporal, etc., that modify the action as stated in the main clause with which it may or may not have some parts in common.

§ 247 CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES

A modal circumstantial clause is called by Arab grammarians, for it sets forth "the state," or "situation." They emphasize the direct relationship of the clause to the part of the main clause which it modifies; this part is thus called , and also, simply, . However, they do not go into the problem of its syntactical structure and various uses.

A According to the nature of such constructions and, in fact, to the nature of circumstances surrounding an action in general, the action or situation expressed by the circumstantial clause must be simultaneous at least in its results with the action stated by the main clause which it modifies. This requires the subordinate clause to be, in addition, a statement of fact, usually expressed by the imperfect—as the progressive tense of Arabic—but also by a resultative perfect. Since a nominal sentence, generally thought timeless in Arabic, may be applied to a definite time, there is nothing against its use as statement of a specific temporal circumstance and thus as a subordinate clause in a circumstantial construction.

Subordinate circumstantial clauses may be used in asyndetical and synodetical construction. For the asyndetical only, the coordinating conjunction is used without any other introductory particles. Hence, in both cases, the syntactical structure of a circumstantial clause may have many points in common with a simple coordination—which may also be either synodetical or asyndetical (see Vol. III, p. 7ff.).

B From the structural point of view, the subordinating function of the main clause can be seen in the polarity of verbal tenses used—perfect in the main clause, imperfect in the subordinate—usually accompanied in the case of explicit subjects by the inversion of the word order of the subordinating clause in syntedical construction. In the cases in which this polarity is not presented—a verb in the perfect tense or a nominal sentence in the clause—only other polarities of less striking force can be presented, e.g., simple perfect in the main clause, resultative perfect with in the subordinate; verbal sentence in the main clause, nominal sentence in the subordinate. These points, though, still leave numerous circumstantial clauses in which there is no apparent sign of the subordinating effect of the main clause.

They are, nevertheless, not to be considered as coordinations, for they cannot be inverted; that is to say, they never precede the main clause. At the most, they can be inserted into the main clause, still following the part they more directly modify, the , , and then only in syntedical constructions.

C The difference between asyndetical and synodetical construction of the circumstantial clauses is also usually neglected as though it were a question of mere style. In many cases this difference is in
reality a question, not of style, but of interpretation or evaluation of the circumstances to be expressed; in such instances, it will be immaterial—or rather of no great difference—which one of the two constructions, syntactical or asyndetical, is used.

In general we may say that a restrictive circumstance is expressed in Arabic with an asyndetical construction, while the syntactical expresses the non-restrictive.

The syntactical construction emphasizes the simultaneity of the two actions; thus they are to some extent independent of each other. The asyndetical, on the other hand, emphasizes the unity of both main and subordinate statements. A typical consequence of this unity can be seen in the so-called auxiliary verbs, which, in such constructions, become compounds of completely different meanings from the ones they express when used independently (see Vol. III, p. 255ff.).

§ 248 THE ASYNDETICAL CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSE

A nominal sentence presenting an adverbial modification may be asyndetically used when it contains a personal pronoun that refers to the noun which the nominal sentence modifies. The following, however, should be noted:

a) The personal pronoun is always brought forward to the beginning of the nominal sentence, thereby causing frequent inversion of the normal word order (see Vol. I, § 9):

We left the custom-house, followed by Negroes carrying our luggage.
Tai. (ZY) 9, 16

He saw Ibrahim painting, holding divination feathers in his hand.
Hai. sir. 423, 1

b) However, when the nominal sentence is modified by the negative adverb لَا, there is no inversion of the word order:

He uncovered his face and found him motionless.
Hai. sir. 505, 14

I found her in this room, on this bed, a stiff corpse, motionless.
Manf. (ZY) 30, 43

a) When the predicate of the nominal sentence is a grammatically undefined adjective or participle, the word order is inverted and the predicate, by analogy to the circumstantial adjective (see Vol. II, § 117), is put in the accusative case:

in order to worship him faithfully and sincerely, with an upright spirit.
Hai. sir. 137, 8

When I saw Abu Yazid with his two hands bound behind his neck....
Hai. sir. 271,

We found him standing, his face pale.
Hai. sir. 110, 22

We all walked down the mountain slope.
Rein. (ZY) 23, 26

Here the following usage of the so-called impersonal passive participles should also be mentioned (see Vol. II, § 177):

Upon hearing the news, she fainted.
Manf. mag. 247, 17

He fainted.
Manf. mag. 125, 16

B A verbal sentence in the function of an adverbial modification may be used in an asyndetical construction
a) When the subject of the main clause is, at the same time, subject of the verb in the adverbial clause. The subject is never repeated in the circumstantial clause nor represented by a personal pronoun:

Then she sat down, looking at him with tenderness and compassion. Gibr. I, 159, 19

We were sitting around the table, eating, drinking, and chatting.

Gibr. II, 29, 5

I spent that night thinking.

Hak. ahl. 21, 8

This very moment an old priest came by asking for your house.

Manf. sha'. 184, 12

b) Or when the noun known as ذو النهاية, modified directly by the adverbial clause, is at the same time its subject. The subject, as above, is not repeated or represented in the subordinate clause:

I saw a young man in the spring of his life approaching. Gibr. I, 134, 18

I saw her child by her bed, crying bitterly.

Manf. (Zy.) 30, 44

He again felt his blood rising to his head.

Mah. qah. 110, 12

When she saw Isma'il beating his brother.

Hai. sir. 88, 23

Their number did not exceed 700 fighting against 3,000.

Hai. sir. 296, 8

How beautiful was the voice we could hear that moment beyond the nocturnal hills, exclaiming...

Rain. mul. 40, 20

...and also very often when the noun known as ذو النهاية—which usually is the subject of the main clause—assumes the function of an accusative or a genitive in the subordinate clause. The verbal sentence, acting as an adverbial modification, always has normal word order with the subject following the verb:

They entered the apartment, followed by the doorman with the suitcase.

Mah. qah. 133, 19

He went on, paying no attention to the twittering of the birds.

Tai. (Br.) 123, 12

Then the villagers came, preceded by the priest.

Rain. (Zy.) 23, 31

He went alone toward Tair, without anybody's knowing about it.

Hai. sir. 187, 1

Mohammed spent two years in the desert being nursed by Halima.

Hai. sir. 110, 12

Her husband was bowing down in front of her without saying a word.

Hus. ayy. 1, 124, 10

She started to cry inconsolably.

Hai. sir. 359, 15
In these instances there is no structural distinction between relative and adverbial constructions.

Their meaning will be different only when the meaning of the subordinate clause clearly modifies either the action or the persons involved in it.

The reason for such structural similarity is to be found in the common nature of the two constructions, both being adjectival; i.e., the subordinate clause fulfills the function of an adjective in the main clause, as either an adjective in attributive agreement with its noun (a relative clause) or as an adjective in the adverbial accusative (a circumstantial clause).

Compare the above with the similarity of both expressions in English: "I saw the coming rain," and "I saw the rain coming." Whereas the first is equivalent to "I saw the rain that was coming," the second is equivalent to "I saw the rain while it was coming."

In modern Arabic, these constructions are quite often used in descriptions:

on the main road with tall trees on both sides and palaces and villas behind them (or behind which there were palaces and villas).

Mah. qah. 16,3

As the joy of children when their mother has returned from a trip (or whose mother has returned from a trip).

Raf. wah. 1,40,12

Um Hamida looked at the shiny jet-black hair with its unbound locks almost reaching the girl's shoulders (or whose unbound locks almost reached the girl's shoulders).

Mah. zuq. 31,7

Note:

They go to Europe and then come back so [changed] that we do not understand them, nor they us.

Jabr. (Br.) 73,18

C The asyndetical construction must be used when the meaning of the action in the subordinate clause is future in relation to that of the main clause in which the action represents a necessary preparation as requirement for the subordinate.

Generally, this construction is equivalent in meaning to an expression of purpose or finality in English:

Then she went to call her mother.

Mah. zuq. 21,16

He handed two books to him, one to be memorized completely and, from the other, several pages only.

Hus. ayy. I,67,9

that he was going to the garden to get some fresh air.

Hak. sul. 57,5

"Will My Lord allow me...to go to my room to change my clothes?"

Hak. ahl. 59,14

the third went to shave.

Hak. ahl. 61,10

I sat down to chat and have some coffee with him.

Hai. (Zy.) 14,9

I hastened toward her to kiss her as I customarily did.

Qal. (Zy.) 21,15

When he finished the prayer he went to look for them.

Hus. ayy. I,56,10
Compare the above with verbs in an auxiliary function, Vol. III, p. 255ff.

F. Statements following the formular questions

a) Why has your face changed?
Hak. sheh. 134,3

b) Why are you looking at my nose?
Manf. sha'. 46,17

c) Then why did Muslims and Christians fight each other as opponents over the centuries?
Hak. sir. 5,15

d) Why do you flee from me?
Manf. sha'. 41,11

e) Why hasn't there been any more news from the king of the city since he departed?
Hak. sheh. 132,2

G. An asyndetical adverbial clause is frequently used

a) following an adverbial accusative:
لأرى فعينها سحتين تندران
He saw that her eyes were red, speaking of tears.
Mah. qah. 121,5

28. Brockelman (Grund., II, p. 473) considers these constructions as sentences in asyndetical coordination.

We, however, prefer to see adverbial–circumstantial constructions, taking into consideration that the same formular expressions are rather frequently followed in modern Arabic by an adverbial accusative:

b) Why are they leaning like that against the wall of the house?
Hak. sheh. 119,15

c) Why are you silent?
Hak. sheh. 139,4
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

He sat down, still and quiet, waiting for what she would say.
Man. sha'. 95,8

After this, we remained a while in silence, without saying a word.
Man. mag. 30,4

Also after an adjective or a participle in the accusative case governed by

The breeze was cool and damp, gently stirring.
Man. mag. 37,17

It was like Rashad Pasha Street, broad and quiet, with tall trees aligned on either side.
Mah. qah. 54,15

After a nominal sentence:

You are in darkness waiting for the dawn.
Hak. ahl. 34,1

Her eyes were red and tired, with [blue] rings under them.
Mah. qah. 36,22

Around him [were] the theologians urging [everyone] to embrace Islam.
Amin duh. I, 380,16

Also after a single noun:

three people, eating and drinking.
Gibr. II, 29,17

Voices of women quarreling, of men calling to each other roughly but conversing in a friendly manner, the noise of loads being put down or carried, the cries of the water carriers praising their water in order to sell it, of a coachdriver scolding his donkey, mule, or horse, the noise of a cart with squeaking wheels...
Hus. ayy. II, 4,14

Three, helping the people....
Raih. mul. 374,10

We should also mention here constructions in which a noun is introduced by the demonstrative adjective "الذي" with an interjectional function; the noun is in the nominative, or in the genitive case after the preposition "ـ" (see Vol. II, § 126):

And there his ox was tied with ropes in a wide shed while one of the priests was watching over it, a club in his hand.
Gibr. I, 92,15

They looked toward the direction from which the voice came... and it turned out to be two girls sitting apart in a corner of the coffee house.
Idr. (Br.) 79,14

There, the youngsters had sought asylum with their mother.
Hus. ayy. I, 124,8

I. The adverbial clause in asyndetical constructions follows the noun it modifies as closely as the normal structure of the main clause allows; thus, it can be separated from its noun by one or more parts of the main clause:

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

When I meet a student of literature in Egypt talking about style...
Musa adab. 19,9

Immediately afterward he got up from his bed mechanically, without fearing or thinking of anything.
'Aww. (Br.) 20,2

I spent a long time in his company, not finding fault with him, nor he with me.
Manf. (Zy.) 30,3

I sat down to have a chat with him and to drink a cup of coffee in his company.
Hali. (Zy.) 14,9

[The Muslims] began to perform the obligatory prayers, both together and privately without fear of harm or dissent.
Hali. sir. 228,5

I want to live freely and independently, not fearing anyone nor intimidated by anything.
Manf. sh. 161,2

but they may also follow each other without any connecting conjunction:

when we came to you, running and asking you for refuge and a hiding place?
Hak. ahl. 12,8

§ 249 VERBS IN AN AUXILIARY FUNCTION

A Numerous verbs, when used governing an asyndetical circumstantial clause, frequently lose their original meaning and become, more or less completely, adverbial determinations for the verbs they govern, which in turn, thus logically become the main verbs in the construction.

From the syntactical point of view, the auxiliary function of such verbs is expressed by the fact that they always introduce the following verb in the imperfect, which verb will have the same subject as that in the governing function. This construction is always asyndetical. From the point of view of meaning, the auxiliary function is seen in the fact that it places the verb following it in a definite temporal sphere and also gives an adverbial modification to its meaning based on, or related to, the original significance of the verb.

However, we can only speak here of an auxiliary function and not of auxiliary verbs, since the latter always retain the same independence from the governed verb that they do in the usual construction. They are always used according to the patterns we have seen in our discussion of asyndetical circumstantial clauses.

B كَانَ should be mentioned at this point. Its original function has faded completely and it is now used to modify or determine the temporal sphere of the governed verb. (For more complete information on this verb, see Vol. I, § 11, 22.)

لا has completely lost its temporal meaning; it is only used with that of the present and frequently is equivalent to a negative particle. (For additional information on its usage, see Vol. I, § 11, 33.)

C أَصْبَحْنَا, "to enter upon morning", أَصِبْحَنا, "to enter into evening" are verbs that in some especially common constructions have dropped their original meanings and have become auxiliary verbs meaning "to become"—with or without any temporal connotation—followed by a verb in the imperfect used asyndetically:

أَصْبَحْنَا لا أَرُوْيَ I no longer know....
Manf. sh. 63,2
My stories to you when you were a child do not interest you now. Qal. (Zy.) 21,18

The people spent the night waiting for what God would do to al-Walid, but on the following morning.... Hai. sir. 125,12

You no longer write to me [even] a single word. Manf. mag. 174,14

Note, however, the following syntactical construction:

Three, helping the people who had become the crown in its hands. Rahih. mul. 374,10

D Other verbs used in a similar way are:

"to remain," "to continue"

He kept talking to me about you for almost an hour. Nu'. liq. 13,10

I went on doing all this. Gibr. I,164,2

Even Abu Bakr...knew only little about the matter. Hai. sir. 210,9

"to go," "to go on"

Thus he went on talking to himself. Mah. gah. 112,3

He went on abusing me. Maz. (Zy.) 1,27

"to become," "to begin"

He began to visit her house every Thursday. Mah. gah. 12,9

I began to humor them.... Hak. ahl. 74,14

"to continue"

For they continued acting and spreading their influence on the conquered countries. Amin duh. I,1,12

My thoughts and feelings were in great confusion.... Gibr. I,133,9

"to last"

As long as this did not happen.... Hai. sir. 151,5

As long as the future interests us.... Hind. (Zy.) 32,15

Note that it may also be followed by a resultative perfect:

You, also, since you asked for my confidence and to be near me. Hak. sul. 71,9

Since we have described the mercy of wealth.... Raf. wah. III,14,9

(For more on this construction see Vol. III, p. 231ff.)

"to stay," "to persevere"
The Count went on saying....
Manf. sha’. 216,8

"to return, "to repeat"

She quietly spoke again.
Gibr. Iy. 121,1

and I did not hear from him again.
Nu’. liq. 46,10

On another occasion I again felt that....
Kam. (Zy.) 4,30

After this I did not learn anything more from her. Manf. (Zy.) 30,25

Note the ellipsis in the following:

Then it stopped little by little until it was only [did not return to be] a weak, faint cry from time to time.
Qal. (Zy.) 21,53

"to be on the point of"

I almost accepted this opinion.
Hai. sir. 25,13

"to the point that I almost fell down.
Hus. ayy. 1,103,10

When she learned of it, she almost fainted.
Hai. sir. 359,14

The gardener had hardly arrived...I had hardly started to....
Qal. (Zy.) 21,36

They had barely reached the door with him....
Hus. ayy. I,134,12

Since Islam was, at its beginning, in a state of almost constant war, with the Muslims almost continuously victorious and the countries conquered and peoples subjugated almost countless....
Amin duh. I,82,5

"to continue," "to wait"

He did not answer him for a while.
Raf. wah. I,260,14

"to go away," "to begin"

She began to smoke.
Mah. zuq. 182,3

I began to fear a bitter scene between him and his sister.
Nu’. liq. 49,3

I began to inspect it.
Maz. (Zy.) 1,4

"to be loose," "to hurry"

She burst into tears.
Hai. sir. 359,15

"to desist," "to cease"

who still remembers....
Tai. (Zy.) 9,37

"to cease," always used in a negative construction:

I have kept it secret.
Manf. sha’. 215,9
E In negative statements the negative adverb, as we have seen (also refer to examples given immediately below), usually modifies only the subordinate verb and thus is placed immediately preceding it:

Then he continued in a low voice which could hardly be heard.
Gibr. I,160,19

He did not answer him for a while.
Raf. wah. I,260,14

If we do not begin with ourselves then...
Rain. mul. 79,2

We who... know almost nothing of the life of the villagers.
Gibr. I,76,11

You do not write to me anymore. not [even] a single line.
Manf. mag. 174,14

With some auxiliary verbs, however, the negative adverb may be brought forward to precede the complete expression without actual change in meaning:

I did not hear from him again.
Nu'. liq. 10,17

The man had scarcely heard her when he began to shake.
Tai. (2y.) 34,5

He had hardly entered the house when...
Hus. ayy. I,40,2

He said in a voice that almost could not be heard.
Mah. gah. 91,2

Among the poets of pre-Islamic times you can hardly find a single one.
Djur. tar. I,168,2

F In correlative disjunctive expressions when the second part includes the same verb as the first but is modified by a verb in an auxiliary function, both parts can be expressed as complete sentences:

Dun'an 5 do not, or you do not, see anything.
Hus. ayy. I,31,5

without seeing anything, or almost anything.
Hus. ayy. I,79,5

But women and the common people were not, or practically not, disturbed by this.
Hus. ayy. I,107,13

but it may also be expressed as an elliptical sentence without the repetition of the subordinate verb. This construction is especially common with كَانَ:

But except on these occasions during the year, it was completely, or almost completely, deserted.
Hai. sir. 89,4

when he had not quite reached manhood.
Hus. 'ala. I,1,11

She fell or almost fell.
Hus. ayy. I,134,1

Note the following:

Don't say another word.
Manf. sha'1. 186,3
The two boys obtained from this work...which offered their family food that hardly provided [enough] means of subsistence.
Hus. (Br.) 100,14

The auxiliary verb may also be used parenthetically within the first member of the disjunction:

They have limited their [own] lives and compositions almost completely to kings and princes.
Musa adab. 7,2

G On the other hand, when a verb in an auxiliary function governs two subordinate verbs, it is usually not repeated:

I began to humor them and to insinuate myself [into their good graces].
Hak. ahl. 74,14

They hardly feel or understand that...
Musa adab. 8,9

Here I am not reproving or praising Existentialism.
Musa adab. 108,3

Omar went on talking to the people and persuading them that...
Hai. sir. 507,2

Note in negative constructions:

I did not hear from him or see him again.
Nu' l. iq. 10,17

The auxiliary verb is not repeated even in instances when the subordinate verbs have different subjects:


My thoughts and feelings were in great confusion....
Gibr. 1,130,9

Although the use of the imperfect in the main clause is not uncommon in asyndetical circumstantial constructions (see Vol. III, p. 250), we may consider characteristic of the verbs in an auxiliary function their freedom to be used in the imperfect, even in cases in which a normal adverbial construction would perhaps take the perfect tense:

strange and entangled odors, which our friend could hardly identify.
Hus. ayy. II,4,1

I almost have the impression that it is impossible to reach into it.
Nu'. l. iq. 61,13

and such markets exist in the villages up to the present.
Djur. tar. I,193,19

The preceptor has hardly opened his mouth in surprise when....
Hai. ahl. 61,11

Hence their use, although infrequent, after َلاٌ َكَانَ قدَّرَهُ ذَيَّبَةٌ
to give them a meaning of the past:

He almost did not see his son.
Mah. qah. 38,1

He, like his wife, never knew any rest.
Mah. qah. 38,4

§ 250 WORD ORDER WITH AUXILIARY VERBS

As we have seen in preceding examples, the main (auxiliary) verb always precedes, usually immediately
before, the verb it governs. The subject in this construction is always the same for both verbs and in the normal word order follows the auxiliary, but precedes the subordinate verb:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Two friends and I were smoking one night.} & \quad \text{Raih. mul. 80,16} \\
\text{If only Juwariyya had not taken her place in his heart!} & \quad \text{Hai. sir. 359,1} \\
\text{The secondary and elementary schools had been closed.} & \quad \text{Hus. ayy. I,127,2} \\
\text{My stories to you when you were a child do not interest you now.} & \quad \text{Qal. (Hy.) 21,18} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The subject may precede both verbs:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Even Abu Bakr...knew only a little about the matter.} & \quad \text{Hai. sir. 210,9} \\
\text{They hardly feel or understand that...} & \quad \text{Musa adab. 8,9} \\
\text{Salma Kirama had not known her mother...} & \quad \text{Gibr. II,65,1} \\
\text{Omar went on talking to the people.} & \quad \text{Hai. sir. 507,2} \\
\text{almost without their feeling her [weight].} & \quad \text{Hai. sir. 356,1} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Both verbs may also be separated from each other by other parts of the construction:

A noun which actually belongs to the subordinate clause may be used as an anacolouthon (see Vol. II, § 180) placed before the subordinate clause and thus between both verbs. This word order may occasion a change in verbal agreement based on gender attraction:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Hashim was growing old.} & \quad \text{Hai. sir. 98,1} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Both verbs —auxiliary and subordinate— are also frequently separated by a complete subordinate clause:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{She, since she was completely emancipated, smoked cigarette after cigarette.} & \quad \text{Raih. mul. 19,4} \\
\text{Since they had nothing to do, they spent their time by the fireplaces.} & \quad \text{Gibr. I,154,4} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Hence, we quite often find that with the verb \( \text{vi} \) the auxiliary verb at the beginning of the clause will govern its subordinate verb in a following clause, for which the auxiliary acts as a temporal exponent. This is especially common with temporal constructions:
But whenever I said, "Nejed," she said, "Iraq." Rain. mul. 23, 10

In the majority of these ships there was really only trade in coffee and soap.
Hus. ayy. II, 11, 14

when they brought the litter to her door, she went out into it.
Hai. sir. 355, 23

(For more examples of this usage before temporal clauses, see the section on word order in temporal constructions, Vol. III, p. 300f.)

§ 251 THE SYNDETICAL CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSE

The difference between syntetical and asyndetical constructions is, in most cases, of stylistic nature. As we have stated, the asyndetical expresses a closer relationship of the circumstances stated by the adverbial clause to the action of the main clause, which thus can be considered as a restrictive circumstance. The syntetical construction, on the other hand, uses the coordinating conjunction و to emphasize the simultaneity of both actions, but at the same time it also emphasizes their independence from each other with regard to the action occurring; thus we may call them nonrestrictive circumstances.

The subordinate function of the circumstance appears, in spite of the coordination implied by the conjunction, in the fact that it is impossible for the subordinate to precede the main clause, and it also appears in the polarity of tenses; this latter, however, is not always necessary (see Vol. III, p. 271). The conjunction usually also causes the inversion of the word order of the subject when the imperfect is used.

In some cases, however, the syntetical construction becomes necessary: e.g., when both main and subor-
This syntactical construction is also frequently found in other instances of nominal sentences:

He answered, his eyes downcast.
Gibr. I, 80, 17

She sleeps with her hand stretched out over her brother.
Raf. wah. I, 87, 4

but what harm could death do to him when his life was a continuous sleep?
Mah. zuq. 6, 20

However, when there is a personal pronoun in the predicate that refers to a noun in the main clause, inversion of the word order occurs:

leaving, with traces of sleepiness in their eyes.
Hus. (Zy.) 25, 32

an angel came to him with a leaf in his hand.
Hai. sir. 133, 3

I stood there, perplexed and excited.
Nu'. liq. 69, 6

She entered it, with hope and longing.
Ghur. (Zy.) 31, 20

What use could she have for another man when she already had two at home?
Mah. gah. 162, 23

"Didn't you know that, being a lover of this valley?"
Nu'. liq. 56, 10

This inversion does not take place when the subject is a demonstrative or a personal pronoun, not even in the instances in which the pronoun does not refer to any substantive in the main clause:

His family thought, his condition being what it was, that...
Hai. sir. 502, 4

The man from Nejed, mounted on his camel, raised his voice in the desert.
Raih. mul. 51, 13

nor does inversion take place when the nominal sentence is modified by "لَا" of general denial:

Since they had nothing to do, they spent their time by the fireplaces.
Gibr. I, 154, 4

The use of "لَا" however, does not prevent the inversion:

The Arabs spread out from their Peninsula into the world..., having no other book in their hands than the Precious Koran.
Djir. tar. II, 12, 8

Note that at times the inversion of the word order is not felt necessary:

The man from Nejed...
mounted on his camel with the stick in his hand.
Raih. mul. 51, 13

A verbal sentence in the function of an adverbial subordinate clause generally takes the imperfect tense with a progressive meaning. The syntactical construction usually requires that the subject precede the verb:

He answered, smiling....
Ayy. (Br.) 31, 17
looking at you for a moment while you are weeping.
Hak. sul. 125,14

I went on walking with
Madame Warde’s words still
sounding in my ears.
Gibr. 1,125,8

Their eyes met while they
greeted each other.
Mah. gah. 132,8

He said, while catching
his breath...
Mah. gah. 103,7

He followed the family
with his eyes while they
went to their seats in
the first row.
Mah. gah. 92,13

Note the word order in the following example:

He raised his eyes to the
Most High, while from his
eyes tears were flowing
copiously.
Gibr. 1,62,4

The same rules are observed in negative statements:

All remained silent for
a moment while the eyes
of his friend were intent
on his gloomy face.
Mah. gah. 88,19

Some of it fell on his
chest without his noticing
it. Hus. ayy. I,20,12

He silently gave it back
to her without knowing
what to say.
Manf. mag. 29,16

He asked, gasping, without
believing his ears.
Mah. gah. 103,16

Note, however, that the inversion of the word order
is at times disregarded:

that God could call him
to Himself while he still
possessed them.
Hal. sir. 502,10

It was like Rishad Pasha
Street, broad and quiet,
with tall trees aligned
on either side.
Mah. gah. 54,15

Mahjub talked and listened,
while glancing furtively
at the open door.
Mah. gah. 132,1

It is also disregarded in coordinated constructions:

“I remember this beautiful
deed, you taking your
purse out of your pocket
and throwing it [to
him].”
Manf. sha’. 60,11

The verb in the subordinate clause is also fre-
quently in the perfect. It has a resulative meaning
and, thus, is generally preceded by the particle ُذُو
(see Vol. I, § 21). In this case, there is no in-
version of the subject:

The girl asked, with in-
creased concern....
Mah. zug. 32,20

“We had seen you with
the people around me....”
Hak. ahl. 80,2
What would the Koreish do with its trade after Mohammed had seized the routes? Hai. sir. 284,12

Khadija looked at him with a heart filled with tenderness and expectation for... Hai. sir. 135,7

He hurried to the doctor's office, blind with anger. Ayy. (Br.) 33,5

However, this language had already become obsolete with the passing of the centuries. Manf. sha'. 161,19

In negative statements, a perfect tense after لَا or a jussive after لَمْ may be used in a syndetical construction. In such instances, no inversion of the word order is found:

"Didn't it surprise you that I recognized you so quickly even though I had seen you only once in my life?" Nu'. liq. 8,16

"It has been more than a year since I saw you last." Nu'. liq. 23,9

Socrates died without having recorded anything from his teachings. Djr. tar. II,26,30

The verb in the clause may be in the jussive governed by the particle لَمْ with a meaning of "not yet having," "without having." This particle is used only in syndetical constructions:

"I remember this beautiful deed, you taking your purse out of your pocket and throwing it [to him]...." Manf. sha'. 60,11

But what harm could death do to him when his life was a continuous sleep? Mah. zuq. 8,20

And there he actually was in the station before the sun had risen. Hus. ayy. I,140,1

that our secret became known to the king before two days had passed. Hak. ahl. 17,1

As with asynodetical constructions, the main clause in the syndetical ones may be nominal or may have a verb in the imperfect:

Mashlindiya appears, after having shaved off his beard and his moustache. Hak. ahl. 73,13

"Would they hinder you, since you are an American?" Rainh. mul. 22,4

While you are in Nejed you will be transported back to the fifth century. Rainh. mul. 29,6

Solomon enters, laughing. Hak. sul. 21,9

أَاَلْلَّهِ لَمْ يُعَمَّكَ وَأَلْقَيْتُكَ فِي ٱللَّهِ وَأَلْقَيْتُكَ عَلَى ٱلْأَرْضَ فِي حَيَاةٍ؟

"Didn't it surprise you that I recognized you so quickly even though I had seen you only once in my life?"

Nu'. liq. 8,16

"It has been more than a year since I saw you last." Nu'. liq. 23,9

Socrates died without having recorded anything from his teachings. Djr. tar. II,26,30

The verb in the clause may be in the jussive governed by the particle لَمْ with a meaning of "not yet having," "without having." This particle is used only in syndetical constructions:

أَاَلْلَّهِ لَمْ يُعَمَّكَ وَأَلْقَيْتُكَ فِي ٱللَّهِ وَأَلْقَيْتُكَ عَلَى ٱلْأَرْضَ فِي حَيَاةٍ؟

"Didn't it surprise you that I recognized you so quickly even though I had seen you only once in my life?"

Nu'. liq. 8,16

"It has been more than a year since I saw you last." Nu'. liq. 23,9

Socrates died without having recorded anything from his teachings. Djr. tar. II,26,30

The verb in the clause may be in the jussive governed by the particle لَمْ with a meaning of "not yet having," "without having." This particle is used only in syndetical constructions:
The main clause may also be optative or exclamatory:

And will you oppose me now that I have 80,000 armed men in my army?
Amin zuh. I, 6, 8

The main clause may also be optative or exclamatory:

How beautiful to see the peasant women...carrying on their heads the fruits they had gathered!
Sak. (2y.) 13, 8

if you had seen me with the people around me....
Hak. ahl. 80, 2

and the main clause may be a clause subordinated to a precedent statement:

to see him while he was eating.
Hus. ayy. I, 22, 8

He asked his father how he could worship them, since they were the work of his own hands.
Hai. sir. 86, 4

C Arabic very frequently presents an action as a subordinate adverbial clause that, logically, may be understood as being the main idea. In this case, the main clause is usually a temporal determination given to the subordinate action, which is understood as the one of longer duration.

Because of this divergence between syntactical and logical value, it is usually better to give priority to the logical idea in the translation:

Night followed day, and in the hours of solitude I fell to thinking....
Gibr. I, 160, 7

Hence the use of adverbial subordinate clauses after temporal clauses:

So I passed a month thrown in that dungeon.
Gibr. I, 167, 20

While all this took place, I was there, standing like a mirror in front of passing ghosts.
Gibr. I, 130, 9

Six years had passed since the Exodus, during which the Muslims had been longing to visit the Ka'aba.
Hai. sir. 365, 14

Since the days of his youth has he watered the fields of the monastery with the sweat of his brow.
Gibr. I, 136, 20

Ever since you brought us to this cave, you have been silent.
Hak. ahl. 11, 10

and also after temporal expressions:

For twenty years you have been wandering through the villages in these mountains.
Gibr. III, 118, 19

From the very beginning up to our days, the privileged of society have ever allied themselves with the clergy and the religious leaders against the people.
Gibr. I, 178, 1
Here am I now with long
grown beard and hanging
hair. Hak. ahl. 35,14

We have seen that a qualitative adjective or a
noun used as an adverbial accusative may present a
temporal determination (Vol. II, § 93). In the same
way, a circumstantial clause may have temporal meaning
when the validity of the statement in the main clause is
restricted to the time expressed by the subordinate
clause. This is limited to circumstantial clauses in
syndetical construction:

Salma Kirama had not known
her mother, for she had
died when she was [still]
a child. Gibr. II,65,1

That happened when I was
still a growing boy.
Maz. (Zy.) 10,1

Abraham felt that life
would not be pleasant as
long as those two women
were in the same place.
Hai. sir. 89,1

"Did anyone see us when
we came out?"
Hak. sheh. 20,12

al-Rashid's caliphate oc-
curred while he was still
a young man.
Amin duh. I,409,3

D The condition or circumstance expressed by the
adverbial clause is frequently understood as the mo-
tivation—and therefore the reason—for the action
of the main clause, thus having a causal, consecutive,
or similar meaning:

Would they hinder you,
since you are an American?
Raith. mul. 22,4

The Koreish did not need
anyone to call them to
war, for they all had a
share in this caravan.
Hai. sir. 256,20

He asked his father how
he could worship them,
since they were the work
of his own hands.
Hai. sir. 86,3

that I, since the rail-
roads had been cut, could
not return to Mansur.
Hai. (Zy.) 14,21

"But how can I forgive
her when she has dis-
honored me?"
Tai. (Zy.) 34,11

Note the following:

Especially since we know
that....
Mah. zuq. 183,17;
Mah. zuq. 180,12;
Mah. zuq. 200,18

This logical —causative— meaning may become,
in some constructions, the usual one, e.g., after
the elliptical construction

Do you recall the inaugura-
tion feast of the Light-
house Inn? How shall I
not recall it, when it was
the beginning and the con-
clusion of my life?
Nu'. lq. 13,2

My joy on leaving Bahrein
was as great as when I ar-
rived there. And how could
it be otherwise, since now
every step brought me nearer
to my ultimate desire.
Raith. mul. 32,23
In the majority of adverbial constructions, the distinction between syntactical and asyndetical is, as we have previously noted, stylistic. Nevertheless, the position of the subordinate clause may also influence the construction to be used. In fact, any distortion in the sequence of main-subordinate clause will require the use of the syntactical. The coordinative conjunction in such cases has the function of a subordinating adverbial conjunction and, at the same time, serves to introduce the adverbial clause. The adverbial clause cannot precede but must always follow the main clause. However, it may be and actually often is inserted as a parenthetical construction within the main clause immediately following the part which it most closely defines:

God, when He gave us hearts, renounced some of His rights to us.
Hak. ahl. 25,11

I departed, still in this condition, for Bahrein.
Rain. mul. 26,9

He found himself, without realizing it, comparing his wife, al-Hoona, and Tahya Hamdis.
Mah. qah. 140,16

Now, when half a century has passed since that event, the wanderer goes his way toward....
Gibr. I,209,5

And one day, when I was away from the town, the girl's father forcibly married her to a man....
Gibr. I,15,1

Five years after the outbreak of the revolution we can....
al-Raf. (Sy.) 19,43

While you are in Nejed you will be transported back to the fifth century.
Rain. mul. 29,8

The subordinate adverbial clauses may precede the main clause only when introduced by the particle لَا (see Vol. III, p. 196f.):

Since everything is over, I will tell you a war secret....
Manf. sha'. 215,8

Now that you have seen and heard what you have, go back, my friend, and tell the people that....
Nur. liq. 77,12

An adverbial clause in also frequently introduced particle (see Vol. III, p. 340f.):

That is a word I memorized but only understood when I was a student in Law School.
Amin (Br.) 86,25

A hypothetical or contrary-to-fact circumstance may be introduced by كَانَ:

It seemed to him as if nothing in this world was worth a dust speck of worry.
Mah. qah. 150,1

§ 252
apposition to an adverbial modification (usually local) within the main clause.

It may introduce a verbal sentence with normal word order and, therefore, be immediately followed by the verbal form upon which the particle has no governing function:

العربية هم بين آل البيت حطمو لعنة مجمان

The Arabs were the ones who brought their language with them wherever they settled.
Amin duh. I, 305, 7

أتنبهكم حبّيَدُ خيّمٍ؟

to go with you where you are going?
Manf. sha'. 74, 17

يجد نفسه حيث بدأ في حفرة وظيق

He found himself where he had started, confused and worried.
Mah. qah. 158, 14

هذا البلد حيث كنتا

this place where you used to meet.
Hak. ahl. 129, 11

في الفندق حيث كنت

in the Grand Hotel, where I used to stay and where I am now writing these pages.
Din (2 y.) 3, 22

may also introduce a nominal sentence usually consisting of only a substantive functioning as the subject for which حيث is the adverbial predicate (see Vol. I, § 7):

وسيء عرف إلى الظاهر حيث الأزهر

and he would go to Cairo, where al-Azhar is located.
Hus. ayy. I, 64, 10

نام حيث هو

and he slept where he was.
Hus. ayy. I, 90, 7

في الأماكن حيث الدرس

In the depths where the numerous pearls are....
Cibr. II, 107, 3

The exodus of the Muslims to Yathrib continued uninterrupted while Mohammed remained where he was.
Hai. sir. 208, 10

The indefinite meaning of the adverb may be determined by a prepositional phrase with في:

أساس حياة البلدية حيث وجدت

The basis of Badouin life, in the parts of the earth where it is found, is the tribe.
Hai. sir. 79, 1

It may also be applied to temporal circumstances without any change in its construction:

أتدأ أن أقول لا حيث يبعث

Do you want me to say "No" when I should say "Yes"? Nu'. liq. 19, 16

(Noon hour) when the peasants were resting in their houses.
Hak. (2 y.) 11, 1

and also to logical relationships expressing origin or cause (cf. the English "from here," "hence"). In Arabic, however, since the adverbial clause follows the main clause, the meaning is "since":

ترك خذمه بعد حيث لا داع

He let his feet lead him, since he had no home or aim.
Mah. zuq. 18, 10

(For more cases of logical relationships, see Vol. III, p.

The indefinite meaning of حيث may be understood as being of general validity: "wherever," "whenever." In these instances, حيث may be followed by a verb in the perfect tense without preterital meaning:

السيدي من سعيد حيث كان

Happy is he who is happy wherever he is.
Nu'. kan. 14, 11
With this meaning, the adverbial clause may precede the subordinate:

Where there is life there is hope.
Nu'. liq. 31,12

This general indefinite meaning of مَنْ may be emphasized by adding لَا:

The peculiar antagonism which one can perceive whenever moral and intellectual impotence invade the soul.
Hai. sir. 69,10

(For more information on this use of لَا, see Vol. III, p. 353ff.)

and they brought her from whence there is no return.
Hus. ayy. I,125,7

Preceded by the prepositions لِبَنَة or لَمْ is may become independent of the main clause preceding and be used in forming new adverbial compounds to express a logical relationship.

is usually followed by a noun in the nominative case, originally the subject of a nominal sentence (see Vol. III, p. 200), and has the meaning of "as to," "from the point of view of," "because of:

pre-Islamic poets from the point of view of their objectives.
Dirj. tar. I,101,18

The details which..., are sufficient to show the basic fallacy of these pretensions.
Sat. (Br.II) 79,20

He was almost his father's equal in physical strength.
Nu'. (zy.) 33,19

It may also introduce a noun clause preceded by and has the same meaning:

(The Existentialist movement) is political insofar as it contradicts the Marxist Socialist ideology... it is religious, for it abolishes the secrets on which religion is based... it is philosophical..., for it is concerned with all the problems that concern philosophy.
Musa adab. 107,15ff.

however, they are in Literature, for Literature is Life. Musa adab. 179,3
A $\textit{in} \textit{so}$ is a demonstrative adverb with a temporal meaning. Its function is that of connecting two statements in which the first expresses the temporal sphere of the second.

In this function, $\textit{in}$ does not have a subordinating value; on the contrary, it precedes the statement that can logically be considered as the main one, in which the particle reasserts a temporal circumstance that has already been mentioned: "at that moment," "at that time," "then," etc.

The preceding statement is frequently introduced by $\textit{in}$, and when it presents an action or situation expressing duration, $\textit{in}$ may emphasize the occurrence following as being unexpected.

$\textit{in}$ introduces a verbal sentence, usually with the verb in the perfect tense:

I was already on my way, then I touched my pocket with my hand and I could not feel my wallet.

Din (Zy.) 3,22

Such was the situation when, suddenly, he saw a man approaching in the distance.

Manf. sha'. 28,8

We were talking when we saw a spectacle that attracted our attention.

Hai. (Zy.) 14,10

She was reclining when Safwan...went by.

Hai. sir. 356,14

They were in al-Tirana when a faction from Hiwazan arrived.

Hai. sir. 436,15

And so he was when, suddenly, the door flew open.

Manf. sha'. 81,12

(On the use of $\textit{in}$, see Vol. III, p. 294f.)

Since $\textit{in}$, with this function and meaning, does not imply any subordination of parts, it may be used to introduce the main clause after temporal expressions:

While he was thus sitting, lost in his thoughts, he suddenly noticed someone approaching him.

Tai. (Br.) 126,26

I remember once when I was walking with my young daughter in Bulgaria and a vender of balloons... suddenly went by.

S. Din (Br.) 64,17
and while people were thus engaged, then Socrates the Wise appeared.

Djibr. tar. II, 26, 17

B. Es frequently loses its attachment to a preceding temporal circumstance and refers exclusively to a following one, for which it assumes the function of a subordinate temporal particle: "as," "when," "at the moment when." With this meaning and function, Es is still followed by a verbal sentence the action of which is usually understood as already having taken place; the verb will thus be in the perfect tense:

He had garnered it with his labor when he served the monastery.

Gibr. I, 137, 18

All this, because a curtain was drawn between him and life at the very moment a curtain was drawn over his daughter's life.

Nu'. liq. 28, 3

I have taken it as my place ever since five years ago, when I inherited it from my uncle.

Tai. (Br.) 132, 1

Now, I understand what you were referring to when you said in your verse...

Jabr. (Br.) 73, 1

All this happened five years ago, when I turned thirty.

Hak. ahl. 20, 12

With this meaning, Es, and the subordinate clause, which the particle introduces, are not bound to taking the second position in the construction:

It may introduce a verb in the imperfect indicative to express an action in the present or future:

She will throw herself into my arms the moment she sees me.

Hak. ahl. 142, 5

She will be amazed when she sees her throne.

Hak. sul. 74, 2

You are exaggerating when you concede taste to those ignoramuses.

Hak. (Zy.) 11, 15

You are not polite when you call your being close to a beautiful woman, prison.

Hak. sul. 45, 5

Hence, it may have a conditional meaning, still retaining the same construction:

and you remained after our departure to await our return to tell Dacianus, if he asked for his daughter....

Hak. ahl. 32, 5

C. The temporal relationship stated or introduced by Es frequently fades to the point that the particle can be used to express a logical relationship instead.
It is then called حرف التعليل, "particle of motivation," by Arab grammarians. The relationship it introduces is not a causative but an explicative one: it states the reason or motives for a preceding statement. However, at times this may be almost identical with a causative interpretation.

In this function, إِن introduces a subordinate clause usually following the main clause. The subordinate clause may be

a) a verbal sentence with the verb in the perfect or imperfect tense:

أشرقت في توبتيه إذ بدأ يذوب:
I hurried to say good-bye, for I began to feel a heaviness in my head.
Nu'. lig. 96,14

كُلُّ جَهَاتٍ مَّجْدُ النَّاسِ إِذ
But Heaven's help arrived, for, at that moment, a man came in...
Mah. zug. 8,14

فَرَفَفَتْ النِّيَابَةُ إِذَا لَكُنْ تَأَنَّ
The situation was reversed, for we hardly find....
Far. (Br.II) 143,14

قُضِّا أَنَّا إِذَا لَمْ يَكُنْ تَعْمَرَ تَعْمِر
I sent him away, for I did not have the price of the balloon.
S. Din (Br.) 64,18

أَنَّهُ سَرَى مَثْقِلًا كَثِيرًا مِّنَ الْخَيْرِ إِذ
[claiming] that he had stolen a sum of money from me, since he could not accuse him of witchcraft.
Nu'. lig. 34,6

إِذْ كَذَّبَ الْجَلَّالُ عَلَى وَأَرَاحُ
since a man might sometimes be a poet but still not versify well.
Djir. tar. 1,59,12

b) a nominal or inverted verbal sentence:

فَكِتَّنَ لِلْأَوَّلِينَ:
for we request of the writer....
Musa adab. 5,3

It cannot be said that man's position in this is like woman's, since he, as well, knows nothing about his bride...
Q. Amin (Sy.) 5,23

Nevertheless, Literature is not something eternal, since it changes with the needs of the peoples.
Musa adab. 11,3

But European dancing is not like that, for it is a fine art.
Musa adab. 85,15

a) a noun in the accusative preceded by "لا" of general denial" (see Vol. II, § 108):

إِفْرَأْتُ إِذَا لَا حَوْىٍ لَّكُمْ عَلَيْهِمْ.
Rejoice, for you have nothing to fear or be sad about.
Gibr. II,117,5

إِنْ لَا بَدَّ أَنْ يَكُنْ فِي الأَرْضِ
for he will necessarily become eccentric.
Musa adab. 83,17

d) and also an interrogative sentence introduced by an interrogative particle:

إِنْ كَيْفَ أَنْ تَسْتَطَبَرَ أَنْ تَسْتَهِيَّلَ مَا يُلُوَّث
We cannot call his verses fine art, for how can sodomy be beautiful?
Musa adab. 9,5

With the same meaning and function, إِنْ may also precede a complete clause; the main clause, however, may or may not precede the subordinate:

إِذْ كَذَّبَ أَنْ خَرَّجَ مِنْ مَـيْـاَةٍ
For after we left al-Manama's waters in the afternoon, the wind subsided.
Rainh. mul. 33,11
§ 254

A ٌدَا is also an adverbial demonstrative particle and, as such, is always used to present a statement at a definite moment during a given action. As a result of this meaning and its demonstrative function, ٌدَا must always follow another statement containing a temporal idea to which the particle refers.

With this function, ٌدَا does not have a subordinating effect but is usually, although not necessarily, coordinated to the preceding sentence by the conjunction ٌدَا and also, albeit less commonly, by ٌدَا or ٌدَا. Arab grammarians call this construction ٌدَا of surprise," or ٌدَا for the unexpected." The "surprise," however, can be understood in different ways and is not, in fact, essential to the construction (see below).

The particle must—with very few exceptions—be followed by a noun which is usually expanded, if grammatically defined, into a complete nominal or verbal sentence with inverted word order.

This restriction in the construction, as well as the fact that the verbal sentence usually takes the verb in the imperfect or the perfect preceded by ٌدَا—and is thus a resultative perfect (see Vol. I, § 18)—leads us to think that originally the noun alone with the particle was the nominal sentence, to which new elements, nominal or verbal, were added.

Therefore, the translation of, e.g., the following should not be: "Lo, he was sitting," but rather, "Lo [there] he was, sitting.

نَظَرَ إِلَى هَوَّةٍ هُوَ فِي سَلِيْسِهَ I looked at him, and there he was, sitting in his place like a black crow.

Ref. wah. 1,115,8

The extensive use that Arabic makes of this construction forces us to present this translation as basic but one which may or may not actually apply, as such, to all cases.

This interpretation also explains the use of the construction with a hypothetical meaning (see below, e.g., ٌدَا ٌدَا).

ٌدَا may introduce a nominal statement which has as subject a noun that has already been mentioned,
and thus the statement is grammatically defined. The element of "surprise" in this case is caused by the new circumstances introduced into the sentence:

The one approaching drew nearer, and it turned out to be an old man.
Maz. (Zy.) 10,20

We entered and found ourselves in a house with two rooms.
Rah. mul. 211,16

I contemplated what was done under the sun, and lo, all was vanity.
Gibr. II,153,3

I turn the pages, and lo, they are white and empty.
Jabr. (Br.) 75,14

I looked [at the hour] and it was eleven-thirty.
Din (Zy.) 3,41

and it turned out to be one of their Syrian friends.
Idr. (Br.) 79,9

They looked toward the direction from which the voice came... and it turned out to be two girls, sitting apart in a corner of the coffee house.
Idr. (Br.) 79,13

And there she was, anxious and afraid, speaking incoherently.
Hus. ayy. I,124,8

Note in the following that the element of "surprise" requires a complete nominal sentence:

Days and more days have passed, and now I, myself, have a child.
Amin (Br.) 88,9

or it may introduce a verbal statement, with the word order always inverted and thus preceded by the subject, which is also grammatically defined. The verb frequently is in the imperfect tense:

Thursday arrived, and [lo,] the boy saw himself actually getting ready for the journey.
Hus. ayy. I,138,13

Friday arrived, and [lo,] the boy saw himself in al-Azhar for the prayer and, there, he heard the preacher, an old man with a powerful and high voice....
Hus. ayy. I,141,1

I stood [there] looking at the two children with a vision of meditation and poetry and, suddenly, meditation and poetry linked me with their dreams. Ref. wah. I,89,4

The verb may also be in the perfect tense usually preceded by the particle ٌ and thus with a resultative meaning:

He went to look for them and, behold, they had been stolen.
Hus. ayy. I,56,10

and, suddenly, the boys and youngsters were seeking refuge with their mother.
Hus. ayy. 124,7
Then he thought he had regained consciousness, but, all of a sudden, he awakened from sleep on his comfortable bed. Raf. wah. I, 100,8

The neighbors had heard the cry and rushed in. Hus. ayy. 124,12

C ـ إذا is very frequently followed by the preposition بـ, which, according to Arab grammarians, is used to emphasize the idea of surprise; hence they call it بـ "بـ التفطير"). The preposition must follow immediately after ـ إذا; therefore, it introduces the subject either of the nominal or of the verbal sentence.

The noun governed by the preposition is grammatically defined with the same meaning and construction as in the nominal sentence presented above:

She thought once she had forgotten marriage, but no, marriage was her dearest hope. Mah. zuq. 26,7

And there he was, facing Karim al-Hulwani. "Aww. (Br.) 14,17

or in the inverted verbal statement:

I looked, and lo, [I saw] the Black One, smiling, with two horns and a long tail, accompanying me. Din (Br.) 59,7

Lo, this "thing" is still living in my mind... moving.... Oud. (Br.) 51,26

He suddenly fell in a pit, which Abu Amir had excavated so that the Muslims would fall into it. Hai. sir. 299,12

With the preposition ـ بي governing the noun subject, this is frequently undefined grammatically, and the element of "surprise" will actually begin with the presentation of the noun itself.

The undefined noun may only be followed by a circumstantial modification:

a) nominal, i.e., an adverb or a prepositional phrase; a noun should be considered as an apposition and will thus agree in case with it:

I turned, and there was a maiden standing near me. Gib. II, 135,6

I turned around, and there I saw a man sitting on the bench near me. Gib. III, 80,6

A short while later I turned around, and there I saw three figures sitting on a rock near by. Gib. III, 71,10

and there was a naked man. Gib. III, 115,12

Suddenly, a man appeared, mounted on an excellent camel... Tai. (Br.) 125,25

Note the following (see also Vol. II, §126):

I suddenly felt as if I had become a different man. Hak. ahl. 21,2
b) or verbal, with the verb in the imperfect or resultative perfect:

If a robber came in, faring well, barefooted, half naked, with their hair in disorder, with their chests showing through the tears of their shabby shirts, assailed him.

`Aww. (Br.) 16,20

And thus I was, when suddenly an elegant car stopped near my house.

Nu'. lig. 22,10

So I was when suddenly something like a stone fell down from above.

Nu'. lig. 54,1

Since (ب) does not imply subordination of parts, it may be used after a temporal clause to in-

dicate that the action or situation introduced by the main clause is unexpected:

While he was peacefully sleeping, he suddenly began to shiver and his breathing became difficult.

Hai. sir. 136,4

D If 151, as a subordinate temporal particle, has completely lost its demonstrative adverbial character and thus does not necessarily follow the main event to which it refers, but frequently precedes the main clause, together with the action it introduces.

Although 131 is used in a very broad range of meanings (see Vol. III, p. 302), it has remained primarily a temporal adverbial particle with a past meaning. Hence, 131 is in this function followed by a verbal sentence with the verb most often in the past tense. This construction remains as the most common one even in the cases when 151 has a different meaning or does not directly refer to a past action. Thus its actual meaning cannot be ascertained only through the correct understanding of the context.

131 is usually followed by a verb in the perfect tense or the jussive after 151 as its negation.

With a preterital meaning, 151 refers to a single action in the past or to an action that is repeated continually. With a nonpreterital meaning, 151 usually still retains a connotation of past, since it refers to actions about the future occurrence of which there can be no doubt, either because the action is always repetitive as a natural or logical event, or because experience dictates our certainty of the repetition. When 151 refers to a future action, occurrence is uncertain, not its actual occurrence. (However, see Vol. III, p. 302 in reference to its conditional meaning, and also compare with 151, Vol. I, p. 312ff).

When the main clause precedes the temporal subordinate clause, the temporal sphere of the action in the subordinate will be determined by the main clause.

The perfect following 151 may have

a) preterital meaning:
For many days he continued to hear this noise when he returned in the evening from al-Azhar.
Hus. ayy. II,3,11

We used to be greatly relieved when he left and stricken with fear when he was present.
Amin (Br.) 86,22

is sometimes used to refer to single actions in the past:

God wished me well when He sent you to me today.
Manf. mag. 22,10

b) nonpreterit meaning:

The thing dearest to peasant women when they are alone is for them to remember their sufferings and their dead.
Hus. ayy. I,26,1

Uncle 'Ali al-Hajj had hardly entered this room at the end of the house to the left when you go up the stairs....
Hus. ayy. II,45,1

His seat was on his left when he entered the room.
Hus. (Zy.) 25,18

The perfect after action in the future:

What would 'Ali do when he learned that Ihsan had become his wife?
Mah. qah. 123,9

E When the subordinate temporal clause precedes the main clause, only through the general context or logical meaning can one ascertain the temporal sphere of the action in both main and subordinate clauses. Since it is in this position usually causes a parallelism in tenses, the main clause generally also takes the perfect tense, with or without a preterit meaning.

a) With preterit meaning:

Whenever he was angry, he never showed any sign of it except....
Hai. sir. 124,12

Whenever he roamed through the village, he was always seen alone.
Tai. (Br.) 124,7

Whenever midday or evening drew near, he left the school to....
Amin (Br.) 86,20

Whenever anything of this sort happened, [the doorkeeper] would lock the gate. Amin (Zy.) 26,16

b) With nonpreterit meaning:

Whenever I get in touch with any [of them] they answer me coldly.
Qud. (Br.) 55,4

these dreaming eyes which weep weightless tears whenever they cry.
Ref. whb. I,31,5

Whenever he cannot find any Arabic names for them, after his research, he may give [them] new ones....
Khal. (Br. II) 7,11
At times إذا introducing a nonpreterit perfect may also refer to a single action. In such instances, the temporal meaning of the particle إذا fades, remaining only the assertion of the fact:

إذا كان المسلمون بمحض عادة،
رُسولُ اللهِ أَطْلَمَ مِنْ أَيْمَانِ الْبَيْكِينَ،
إذًا أَنَّ العربَ بِمُبِيدِهِمْ القُوَّيِ،
إذا كان السُّلَومُ يَكُونُونَ:
وَالْقُوَّةُ الكِرْمَ،
إذًا أَنَّ العربَ بِمُبِيدِهِمْ القُوَّيِ،
بِمُبِيدِهِمْ خَالِدَةٌ العَرَبِيةَ
الْأَلَّى.

Just as the Muslims consider Mohammed the Great Messenger of God and the last of the Prophets, so the Arabs consider him as their national hero....
And just as the Muslims consider the Precious Koran holy..., so the Arabs also consider it the ideal of Arabic eloquence.  Zur. (Sy.) 17,6

F In this position, when the perfect in the clause or when the whole construction is to have a preterit meaning, كان will precede the clause, agreeing in person with the subject of the subordinate clause in case of diversity of subjects:

لَكِنَّ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ الْبَيْكِينَ
إذا دُخِلَ عَلَى هُمْ،
فَشَلَّتْ أَعْمَالُ أَوْحَي،
الْبَيْكِينَ بِقُرْنَينَ.

For this reason, when she went in to the Prophet, he stood up, kissed her, and let her sit down in his own place.
Haj. sir. 500,21

كانوا إذا جاءوا بالبيكين إلى
بابها عُرِفتُ إليه.
Haj. sir. 355,23

The subject of the subordinate clause may be placed following the verb كان, thus not within the clause but preceding it:

إذا كان زائد إذا استطاع
رُتبَهُ زَرَّعَ صُوْتَهُ:

Whenever Zaid was not in agreement with the Koreish, their opinion was given priority.
Haj. sir. 34,18

But when the Badouin Arab entered Mu'awiyah or Abd al-Malik, he never felt that....
Amin duh. I, 104,15

The verb of the main clause is usually, as we have seen, in the perfect tense, but it may also be in the imperfect:

لَكِنَّ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ الْبَيْكِينَ
إذا دُخِلَ عَلَى هُمْ،
فَشَلَّتْ أَعْمَالُ أَوْحَي
الْبَيْكِينَ بِقُرْنَينَ.

for in doing this, you would be denying God's justice. Gibr. I, 195,4

When a man loses a dear friend and looks around, he will find many others.
Gibr. I, 109,7

When a stranger knocks at their door, they do not deny him entrance.
Nu'. kan. 10,9

When their appointed time arrives, they cannot postpone or hurry it an instant. Haj. sir. 556,17

Whenever any influential person should come requesting a service involving some danger for..., he would assign to any of his subordinates....
Ayy. (Br.) 33,15

إذا دُخِلَ الْغِرَابُ لِيَحْسَبُ خَطْوَةُ
أَوْحَي،
إذا كان كَذَٰلِكَ لا توْمَيَّ الْمَرَافِقَة
كَتَبَ عَلَى بُكْرَةٍ يُمْضِي،

Whenever entering the room, he takes one or two steps. Hus. ayy. II, 7,3

If we did not keep watching steadily, we would not be aware of all that concerns us. Rain. mul. 56,4

It is also possible for the main clause to be an interrogative:
In Arabic, as in other languages, temporal and conditional clauses are very closely related. This is especially true when a temporal circumstance is understood as being essential or necessary for the actual occurrence of the action expressed by the main clause. Hence ٌۛۚ۔ۜ ٌۛۚ۔ۜ is also frequently found with a meaning equivalent to that of a conditional particle.

The basic conditional significance of ٌۛۚ۔ۜ normally remains so closely related to its temporal one that even in its conditional use, it generally introduces only a statement of something which is known through experience and about the eventual occurrence of which there can, therefore, be no doubt. ٌۛۚ۔ۜ leaves uncertain the time, not the fact, of the actual event. (Compare with ٌۛۚ۔ۜ Vol. III, p. 312ff.)

In its conditional usage, ٌۛۚ۔ۜ retains the same patterns of construction as above with the only difference being that the particle with this meaning also often introduces a verbal sentence with inverted word order; thus it is followed by the noun subject of the verb. This construction is not found with ٌۛۚ۔ۜ as a temporal particle.

We very frequently find that when the main clause follows the subordinate, it is introduced by a conjunctive (ٍۚ۔ٍۜ) (see Vol. III, p. 360 and p. 361ff.) ٌۛۚ۔ۜ used with a conditional meaning generally introduces conditions which are not contrary to fact

a) followed by a verbal sentence with normal word order:

إذا كان فلا تقول إن

If he dies, do not tell that....

Ref. wah. I, 79, 4

كان في يبكي إذا كان الجواب

It was my intention, if the answer was in the affirmative, to....

Raith. mul. 14, 18

And should they not believe in him, what could he do? Hal. sir. 137, 23

If we examine it comprehensively...we shall find.... Amin duh. I, 104, 9

What do you think he would do if he should enter here at this moment?

Hak. sheh. 103, 9

It would take too long to show in detail the merits of Dr. Haikal’s book.

Hai. sir. n, 9

Hence it is frequently used as a particle to introduce expressions of formal politeness: "if you please,"

"if you will allow...."

إذا غب إليها إذا شئت

Go to her, if you wish.

Manaf. mag. 250, 8
Subordinate Clauses

Now I think I need some fresh air, if you will allow me to go into the garden for a moment.
Hak. sul. 46,14

I'll go to get ready for the journey, if you will allow me to.
Hak. sul. 57,2

Because I may also be used to introduce hypothetical conditions and even conditions contrary to fact.

If a part of humankind were to perish little by little, it would be the people of the cities.
Sak. (Zy.) 13,31

Human attitude is the eternal in literature, if there is eternity in this world.
Musa adab. 11,16

The relationship between the subordinate and main clauses may also be causal, consecutive, concessive, etc.

I did not understand it... since I was a stranger in those places.
Maz. (Zy.) 1,14

Since the road has brought us a strong young man, we shall accept him.
Gibr. I,179,20

for we are convinced that although the sun rises from the East, light will come to us from the West.
Musa adab. 11,9

This general meaning is not necessary and, therefore, the particle may refer to a single action:

What do you think she would do if she discovers that the young man whom..., is trying to... and what would the simple villagers say if they knew that...?
Gibr. I,175,9

Would they not close their ears to me if I told them that...?
Gibr. I,175,13
What will Sheikh Abbas... say when he hears my story? And what will the priest of the village say when those words which caused my expulsion from the convent come to his ears? Gibr. I,175,15

I §255

**"when," "after," introduces an action which is understood as completed at the beginning of that expressed by the main clause. It introduces a verbal sentence with normal word order and with the verb in the past tense. The main clause, which always follows the subordinate, usually also takes the verb in the perfect tense of لَمْ with the jussive as the negation of the perfect.**

When I returned, I went to visit Rashid. Gibr. I,108,15

When they saw that Mohammed was the first to enter, they said... Haß. sîr. 126,1

When I lost you, I could find neither compensation nor substitution for you. Manf. mag. 169,7

When he went to his lesson, some of the pupils asked him... Hus. ayy. I,20,13

The imperfect may also be used in the main clause:

After I have prepared the shroud for you, you want to make a profit from it. Mah. zuq. 39,13

The imperfect following لَمْ is not common, and can be considered as an influence from the spoken dialect:

The clause following َنَا أَسْلَمْ أَجَاهُ أَجَاهُ أَجَاهُ may also be introduced by َنَا أَسْلَمْ أَجَاهُ أَجَاهُ أَجَاهُ when we shall have interrogated the important witnesses. Hak. yaum. 49,1

The clause following َنَا أَسْلَمْ أَجَاهُ أَجَاهُ أَجَاهُ may also be introduced by َنَا أَسْلَمْ أَجَاهُ أَجَاهُ أَجَاهُ when they answered that they did not know how numerous the Kureish were, Mohammed asked them.... Hai. sir. 259,16

When the religious schools were annexed to the Ministry of Education, his situation became the same as.... Mah. zug. 18,14

When he asked Kamil, he answered him.... Mah. zug. 191,7

When the Ka'aba was purged of its idols, the Prophet ordered.... Hai. sir. 424,6

and at noon the news spread in al-Zuqaq that.... Mah. zug. 183,1

Because of its temporal significance, a logical relationship has been derived from َنَا أَسْلَمْ أَجَاهُ أَجَاهُ أَجَاهُ: Since I was a tourist... it was necessary for me to take a carriage. Maz. (Sy.) 1,9

Since I had never felt desperation, reading was for me a source of endless strength and joy. Jabr. (Br.) 72,9

§ 256 THE PARTICLE َكَي AND ITS DERIVATIVES

The particle َكَي and its derivatives introduce circumstances that represent the aim or goal of the action expressed in the main clause. The action of the subordinant is always future in regard to that of the main clause.

Arab grammarians call these particles َحُرُفُ التَّمْلِيق, "particles of motivation," a name which does not necessarily always express the actual meaning and value of the construction.

The particles directly govern the verb. Therefore, they introduce a verbal sentence with normal word order. The verb is in the subjunctive and follows immediately after the particle.

A َكَي "so that," "in order that," "(in order) to":

"Didn't we pray to Him?"...

"Yes, (but you did) to ask Him for the well-being of your wife and child." Hak. ahl. 24,14

"Why is he doing that with it?"..."In order for it to answer concerning everything he asks." Hak. shen. 18,10

He sent [messengers] to Chosroes and Heraclius and other kings and princes so that they would embrace Islam. Hai. sir. 1,17

The negation of َكَي is expressed by the negative adverb َلَنَّ أَكِبْرُ َلَنَّ أَكِبْرُ, without any apparent difference in meaning between either one). The use of the negation َلَنَّ أَكِبْرُ َلَنَّ أَكِبْرُ
does not change the governing function of the particle; the verb is, therefore, also in the subjunctive:

I closed my eyes so that I might not see those rays. Gibr. I,115,3

but I remained silent lest I stop her from speaking. Gibr. I,116,17

Close the window, lest the wind put out the lamp. Gibr. I,157,11

They don't give themselves to anything, lest they experience anxiety about it. Raf. wah. I,32,9

Isn't it in order that its heat will not harm our bodies? Hak. ahl. 37,11

In cases of two correlative clauses, one affirmative and the other negative, the particle does not have to be repeated in the second member:

Some of them argued with the Prophet that they should return to Medina so that they would not encounter those who had left Mecca to fight them. Hai. sir. 260,12

B ُكُبُ "so that," "in order that," etc. — a particle equivalent in meaning to the preceding ones. It is a compound of ُكُبُ and ُكُبُ "infinite" according to Arab grammarians, and thus an adverbia ُكُبُ; see Vol. III, p. 210f.

It is used, as ُكُبُ, followed by a verbal sentence with normal word order, the verb being in the imperfect. However, there has always been disagreement as to the mood of the verb, whether it is in the indicative or in the subjunctive. In vocalized texts, unless the verb is given in the plural, there is no possibility of ascertaining the mood intended by the writer31:

Who tills the soil and gets from it what he can to protect his body from.... Gibr. I,178,14

so that there would be no difference between those who have either of the two editions. Hai. sir. 25,12

She remained silent for a moment to recover her breath. Gibr. II,47,9

Mohammed sent [messengers] to all the tribes summoning them to [military] preparation in order to gather an army as great as possible. Hai. sir. 455,14

Note the following example:

I don't want to adorn my body with those contemptible clothes, lest my spirit remain in torment in this place of bloodshed. Gibr. I,199,20

§ 257 CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

Under the heading of "Conditional Clauses," we shall study a series of constructions in which the

31. Rock., Synt. Verb., p. 459 only mentions examples with the subjunctive. However, see Wright, II, p. 29, B and Hunjid under ُكُبُ.

32. The vowel ending of the imperfect indicative is given in the text.
actual validity of a given statement is "conditioned" by another statement presented along with it.

Hence, the essential feature here is the very fact that the statement presented by the main clause has no validity in itself without the restriction imposed by the subordinate clause. The main clause is, in all cases, structurally complete in all its essential parts, as is the subordinate.

These clauses are always syntactical, since the conditional subordinate clause is always introduced by one of the two Arabic conditional conjunctions ك or ك. These, however, do not necessarily place the subordinate clause in a secondary position; in fact, they very frequently precede the main clause, upon which they have a definite syntactical influence in verbal mood and tense as well as word order, unless this influence is nullified by means of the coordinating conjunction ك (see Vol. III, p. 260ff.).

Arabic has always been extremely rich in its different uses and meanings of the basic conditional constructions. In the modern language, the same trend has been continued to such an extent that, in some instances, the conditional particles have lost their essential conditional characteristic—the validity of the main clause being based on the subordinate clause—and have taken on various meanings: exception, adversative, etc.

In the following chapters we shall attempt a presentation of all the uses of the two conditional particles regardless of their meaning, since a change in meaning does not occasion a change in their syntactical structure.

On the other hand, we shall also try to enumerate the most important semantic uses of Arabic conditional constructions in general.

§ 258 ك, "if," basically states a fact or an event, the eventual occurrence of which one cannot be sure of, but which is always possible. Contrary to ك, which presents through its conditional meaning uncertainty only about the time when the action will take place, ك questions whether or not the action itself as stated will occur.

A classical distinction is given in: ك ك "if he dies (today of this present illness)."

As we have stated above (see Vol. III, p. 302), ك often takes on a conditional meaning and may even be used in hypothetical constructions; that is to say, as an equivalent of ك. The opposite, however, cannot be said about ك, which never is used when the construction has a temporal meaning and thus it can never be equivalent to a temporal ك.

Frequently, the use of either one will be determined only by stylistic appreciation, since the constructions with ك still seem to give a greater degree of certainty to the statement presented in the clause.

Some examples might help to clarify the difference still existing between the two particles:

أَمِيْنَ حَلَّوَالِانِّيُّ كَبِيرَ وَاً فيِنْ لَهُمْ يَبْعَيْنِ كَبِيرَ عَمْلى بمِهدَّامِهِ وَسَلَطاً؟

إِذًا عُلِّيَ إِمَّا أَنْ كَتَبَ خَلْصَتْ كَفَايَةً كَانَا خَلْصَتْ إِلَى كَفَايَةً إِلَى

B ك is usually followed by a verbal sentence with normal word order and, therefore, immediately precedes a verb. The verb is most often in the perfect or the jussive after ك as its negation, with nonpreterial meaning.

The subordinate clause very frequently is precedent to the main clause and usually occasions a parallelism of tenses whereby the latter also takes the perfect tense with or without preterial meaning. The actual temporal sphere of the action is given exclusively by the context, e.g.,

Or were they afraid that if they remained in Abyssinia they would become more courageous, and thus when they came to the help of Mohamned, they would return richer and in greater number? Hai. siri. 154,12

Whenever one of them is alone and does not find anyone to talk to, she tells herself all kinds of stories, sings if she feels happy, or praises the dead if she is sad. Hus. siri. I,25,12
a) with preterital meaning:

If Sheikh 'Abbas spoke to the villagers, they bent their heads in assent... and if he was angry, they trembled with fear... and if he slapped anyone's face, that person remained motionless, silent... and if he smiled at anyone, they all said... 

Gibr. I,152,7

If any of them tried it, she defended herself gently and politely.

Manf. sha'. 30,5

b) with nonpreterital meaning:

if he has nothing to expose, he discloses the secrets of his own soul.

Nu'. 10,6

If you do it, I'll beat you with this stick.

Manf. sha'. 39,1

The jussive after إن, or in the main clause, is also used, although not commonly found:

And should he ask a villager about the story of Sheikh 'Abbas, he would answer... 

Gibr. I,209,9

If they belong to our brothers of al-Aus, we shall protect you from them.

Hai. sir. 359,10

If anything surprised me, it would be your tranquility.

Hus. 'ala. III,207,5

Parallelism of tenses, however, is not necessary. The imperfect tense may be used in the main clause and it gives the construction a greater degree of certainty:

If we fall, we shall die as martyrs; if we triumph, we shall live as heroes.

Gibr. II,61,15

and if I should deny it, you certainly will not believe me.

Hai. sir. 361,4

C However, the use of the main clause in this position generally is, as we have seen, restricted by the influence of the subordinate clause, and only under special circumstances does the main clause take a different structure, e.g., in the form of an interrogative sentence, but only when the interrogative is introduced by the particle if, which must be in the absolute beginning of the sentence (see Vol. I, § 41):

and if you were considered sufficient as you are and were called [to receive] beauty, wealth, and honor, wouldn't you accept?

Hai. sir. 122,8

or when the emphatic particle ل precedes the conditional particle, the former may introduce the main clause and the verb may then also be in the energetic:

If I would admit to what people say..., I would be confirming what did not occur.

Hai. sir. 361,3

By God, if we should fight you, you would certainly learn that we are men!

Hai. sir. 279,23
If we did [it], they will surely become more insolent. Hai. sūr. 290,18

Note that the particle يأ may also introduce a verb in the imperfect:

His prestige was great in the boy's eyes, and when he remembered him, his heart was filled with compassion and affection ever after. Hus. ayy. II, 52, 16

D Otherwise, the main clause following the subordinate conditional clause may be given greater syntactical independence by using the coordinating conjunction ف، which nullifies any influence the subordinate clause might have upon the main clause (see Vol. III, p. 360ff.).

E When the subordinate conditional clause is to have a preterital meaning, the perfect of كإ، or its jussive after كإ، is used before the perfect in the subordinate:

If God has ordered him [to do] this, let him obey God's command.
Hai. sūr. 88, 3

If he thought so, he was mistaken.
Amin duh. I, 119, 16

If the one who erased pity from your heart left you a father's compassion, do take her with you.
Manh. (ZY) 30, 40

If your father told you of those events, then this meeting is not the first one between us.
Gibr. II, 21, 17

Note, however, that كإ governing an imperfect does not necessarily have preterital meaning:

If you want to stay alive flee in the darkness.
Hak. sheh. 15, 7

if you want us to believe you, tell us your affairs
Hus. 'ala. II, 72, 4

F When the main clause precedes the conditional subordinate clause, the construction after كإ remains the same. The temporal sphere of the action is determined by the main clause, although it usually is nonpreterital.

In this instance, the subordinate does not influence the main clause, nor is the use of كإ required:

All this will be in vain if the people of al-Azhari
Raf. wah. III, 45, 21

I'll die if I stay here.
Hak. ahl. 70, 2

And why should it bother me if I have a different opinion?
Manh. mag. 21, 17

For what reason would he summon him if not for this?
Mah. gah.

He is excellent, if you will; a saint, if you wish; and also a prophet, if you like.
Mah. zuq. 180, 19

The subordinate conditional clause is also frequently placed within the main clause in a parenthetical construction (see. Vol. III, p. 375). In this case, as in the preceding, the subordinate has no influence upon the main clause, nor is the use of كإ required:
(He was) afraid he would wake him up if he moved. Hus. ayy. II,43,2
Or were they afraid that if they remained in Abyssinia they would become more courageous...
Hai. sir. 154,12
But the Koreish were afraid, if Mohammed arrived and with him those who believed in God and His mission..., that...
Hai. sir. 365,7
A noun or pronoun which is, at the same time, the subject of both the main and subordinate clauses, will also frequently be placed before the conditional clause:
He is nothing if he is not love and mercy. Gibr. II,136,7
Note that the noun or pronoun preceding the subordinate clause may not necessarily belong to the main clause but may also be a part of the subordinate clause, usually as its subject (see Vol. II. § 180 on anacoluthon).
but if they should kill him, the Banu Hashim and the Banu al-Muttalib would seek revenge.
Hai. sir. 209,1
He was convinced that, if he ever left an opening in his blanket, it would be inevitable that the hand of an Iblis would reach through it to him.
Hus. ayy. I,8,14
G In modern Arabic, إن... is also frequently used to introduce a verbal sentence with inverted word order and is thus followed immediately by a noun:
for I fear that compassion will overwhelm you if you look into my face.
Hai. sir. 88,13
If they contradict me, I'll tell them...
Ref. wah. I,58,5
He was afraid that if he waited for them... Hai. sir. 256,3
seeing the imminent danger if they did not overtake Mohammed and prevent him from reaching Yathrib.
Hai. sir. 211,11
She was afraid if she kept silent that, with such a quick pace, they would reach al-Ma'ahul Square before he would say what he wanted to.
Mah. zug. 54,15
H Strictly speaking, إن... often does not introduce a condition but, rather, a hypothetically accepted situation: "if that is the case":
In a street in Tarsus, if that is still Tarsus. Hak. ahl. 80,1
He threatened him with death if he should disobey him.
Manf. sha'. 24,10
Perhaps it has remained the same, if it is not worse. Hai. sir. 3,8
He is nothing if He is not love and mercy.
Gibr. II,136,7
It is also at times used to introduce an indirect question. (Note the similarities in the uses of the English "whether" and "if.")

Tell me whether that is true. Hak. sheh. 67,15

I still don't know whether that was good or not for me. Hak. ahl. 125,5

Tell me whether or not such things are common. Din (2y.) 3,33

Ma'mun Ridwan did not know whether he would be sent to France or would remain in Egypt. Mah. gah. 79,15

لَيَسْرُ، إِنَّ كَانَ حَلَفُهُ عَيْبًا

to see whether there was any imperfection in it. Amin (2y.) 26,24

(Also see the chapter on indirect questions, Vol. III, p. 97ff.)

§ 259

A The conditional clause introduced by اللّٰهُ is a verbal sentence with normal word order and with the verb most often in the present tense (or the jussive after اللّٰهُ as its negation) with nonpreterit meaning in order to express a hypothetical condition, or with preterit meaning when the statement involves a condition contrary to fact. The actual meaning of the perfect tense, and thus of the condition, is given by the context.

a) The main clause following the subordinate conditional clause is also a verbal sentence with the verb in the perfect tense, most often introduced by the emphatic particle لٰهُ; otherwise, the main clause

is preceded by اللّٰهُ (see Vol. III, p. 361). The verbs in both clauses may have a preterit or nonpreterit meaning.

1) With the nonpreterit perfect, can be used as equivalent to إن.

لَمْ يَكُنُ فَلَمْ يَكُنْ

If you want me to tell you, I'll say... Manf. mag. 295,12

Perhaps if he knew [that], his heart would soften a little. Hak. sul. 48,5

لَيْسَ لَمْ يَكُنْ مَجِلَّ الْبَرَاءَةُ فَيَحْبَبْ

If the extent of trade there were not large, half of the population would emigrate. Raith. mul. 224,17

although it usually gives the condition a connotation of impossibility:

لَيْسَ لَمْ يَكُنْ الْأَنْثَى فَلَمْ يَكُنْ النِّسَاءُ

If people understood the language of silence, then they would be nearer to the gods than to the wild beasts of the forest. Gibr. I,138,7

لَيْسَ لَمْ يَكُنْ آتَى الْكَعْبَةُ فَلَمْ يَكُنْ الْكَعْبَةُ

If Humanity were wise, she would stand up today rejoicing.... Gibr. III,26,4

لَيْسَ لَمْ يَكُنْ قَدْ ضَمَّتْ حَجَّةَ الْمَعْلُومٍ

If you could leaf through it, you would find my account still unpaid. S. Din (Br.) 61,26

2) With a verb having preterit meaning, اللّٰهُ introduces a condition contrary to fact:

لَيْسَ لَمْ يَكُنْ نَا نَاتَ

Had he been a prophet, he would not have died. Raith. mul. 230,5
If you had asked it on behalf of a stranger, we surely would have done it. Hai. sir. 121,5

and if there had been any more left, he would have eaten them also. 'Hnw. (Br.) 16,22

It it had been thus, I would not have found you. Hak. ahl. 132,5

b) The preterital idea can be emphasized with the particle "نَّوْ" placed before the perfect in the subordinate clause:

*If he had let himself go, he would have cried.*
Hus. ayy. 1,140,13

*If he ever did [it], the same thing the boy experienced with the Sura of The Poets would have happened again.*
Hus. ayy. 7,76,16

c) Since "نَّوْ" cannot be followed by a noun, when it introduces a nominal or an inverted verbal sentence, أَنْ is used after the conditional particle:

*Had one knowing nothing of her situation seen her in such positions, he would have thought her sleeping restfully.*
Nu'. liq. 37,2

*If the shepherd were here, he would tell you.*
Hak. ahl. 28,10

33. The resulting compound particle could perhaps be literally translated as "if (it is a fact) that."

If I had wanted to..., it would have been necessary to... Hai. sir. 20,8

Had al-Rafi'i learned European literatures..., he would have known.... Musa adab. 58,20

If I had done [so], this edition would have been in the hands of the readers months ago. Hai. sir. 25,14

Had fate brought him together with someone other than Isma', perhaps the situation would have been different. Mah. gah. 156,5

and if any part of Creation changed, everything created would become different. Hai. sir. 151,3
d) The conditional subordinate clause frequently follows the main clause. In this position, the temporal meaning of the construction is determined by the main clause:

*We could not have been deceived by it had we known the true leaders from the beginning.*
Qud. (Br.) 51,8

And what would become of you in the future if this young man...should turn out to be stupid? Manf. sha'. 103,4

Why don't you speak to me of your love, if it is true that you love me a little? Hak. sheh. 68,3
to be a woman if she could.
Hak. ahl. 44,16

How lucky my lot would be
if what you say were true!
Hak. ahl. 49,8

It would have surprised me
if you had not recognized
me. Nu'. lig. 11,1

is frequently used after a to give
this particle a hypothetical meaning, or even one
contrary to fact, which is otherwise not permitted
(see Vol. III, p. 236):

as if you would be looking
at it from another firmament,
not from the earth.
Raf. wah. I,51,10

as if he were wealthy with
money and property, although
he actually only owned the
house.... Mah. zug. 13,8

She took the matter [as
lightly] as if it were
about the weather.
Nu'. lig. 33,4

You talk to me as though
you had known me before
or as if you were my
master. Hak. ahl. 106,2

is also used to introduce a clause that
expresses a condition whose actual realization is
desirable but is not likely to happen or is even
impossible. In such instances, it often becomes
equivalent to an exclamatory particle for contrary-
to-fact wishes.

The particle is followed by a verbal sentence
with the verb in the perfect or imperfect tense. The
perfect, however, may or may not have preterital
meaning. It may also be followed by a noun clause
introduced by ِنَأ.

after verbs of wishing and the like:
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

A إِنَّمَا وَلَدَنَّى لَوْ جَعَلَ الْكَبْرَىُّ فِي

By God, if only Satan
would place a perfect
man on his right hand... and on his left a beau-
tiful woman...!
Raf. wah. I,122,17

also as an independent exclamatory particle:

ْكُلُّهُ لَمْ تَحْمِله ِّنَّـا

One word, if only I had
not written it!
Hak. ahl. 16,3

َلَوْ تَعْلَمْتُمَا رَأَيْتُمَا وَأَصَبْتُمَا

If you only knew what I
have seen and heard!
Hak. ahl. 34,8

َلَوْ أَطَفَأْتُ القَلْبَةَ عَنْ سَوَآَعَ

If we could just hear
every sound that exists!
Hak. sul. 28,8

َلَوْ رَأَيْتُمَا وَكَذَلْكَ أُحَاطَتَ

If you had only seen me
surrounded by people...!
Hak. ahl. 80,2

§ 260

Laَيَّنَّا, "if not," always introduces a single
member and hypothetically negates its existence:
"if it were not for...."

It may be followed by a single noun in the nomi-
native case as a statement of the noun's existence
which the particle hypothetically denies. The noun
should be considered a nominal sentence with a single
component (see Vol. I, § 2).

In this construction, the main clause is usually
subsequent to the subordinate clause and is frequently,
but not necessarily, introduced by the emphatic par-
ticle لَوْ or, at times, by ِّنَّا. The verbal tenses in
the main clause have their usual meaning and give a
temporal aspect to the nominal sentence introduced
by لَوْ:

B When the main clause expresses the existence
of a noun which is hypothetically denied, it may

If it were not for your
Christian wife, you would
not have embraced Chris-
tianity. Hak. ahl. 30,10

Was it not for her fear
of you, she would have
come to you.
Tai. (67.) 34,31

Imru' l-Qais had great
poetic talent; had it
not been for this, he
would not have composed
verses.

Had it not been for his
fear of the consequences
of the crime, he would
have yielded.
Raf. wah. I,99,15

When لَوْ is followed by a personal pronoun, it
is suffixed to the particle:

َلَوْلَا أَكُنتُ لَأَخَفَّفُ الْأَمْرَةُ

Had it not been for you,
Princess Prisca would not
have embraced Christianity.
Hak. ahl. 30,13

َلَوْلَا أَكُنتُ أَسْتَطِعُ أَنْ...

Had it not been for you,
I could not have....
Hak. ahl. 29,8

َلَوْلَا لَا أَصْبَحَهُمَا

If it had not been for us,
you would not have gotten
it. Hai. sir. 268,16

َلَوْلَا لَا أَنْتُ مِنْ هَذِهِ

Had it not been for him,
I would have died of sor-
row and sadness in this
isolation in which I live.
Manf. sha'. 255,16
also take the same form as the conditional subordinate clause, resulting in the following parallelism:

Were it not for the pearls, as I have said, neither would there be...

Kindness and humility would have been the most beautiful aspect of the letter, had it not been for the pearl of sincere affection.

What could I ever do if it were not for you?

We would not have delayed our return, had it not been for the High Commissioner.

Hence, may be used to introduce an exception to a given statement, equivalent to the English "except":

They almost enclose it completely but for three passes.

may also introduce a noun clause preceded by or . In both cases, the particles present a statement of fact hypothetically negated by : "had it not been (for the fact) that..." "if it were not (for the fact) that..." The main clause frequently precedes the subordinate:

I never would have believed that... had you not sworn it to me.

If I had not left the school today before the boys were dismissed, he would not have returned barefooted.

There would almost have been a revolt, had it not been for the fact that the Imam stood up and said the Khutba.

I could not possibly have believed it, were it not for the fact that he himself told me.

If his mother had not interfered on his behalf, he would have had a scene to remember with his father.

I would have kissed Mr. Hashim on his forehead had the rules... allowed it.

This construction often loses its conditional meaning to such a degree that does not introduce a hypothetically negated event or action, but simply an opposition of two sentences in a function very much like that of an adversative opposition:

He was almost desperate, but he remembered his mother's relative.

He wanted to avoid them, but they blocked his way.
The temporal sphere of the subordinate clause is determined by the temporal meaning of the verbal tense in the main clause:

- I would find my food delicious, even if it were just bread and olives.
  (Sak. 7, 3)

- that you believe even if the people apostatize.
  (Amin 7, 28)

- But his mother would be the most beautiful of all, even if she were the ugliest.
  (Raf. wad. 1, 33, 11)

B The subordinate clause may precede the main clause; the conditional particles إن or لو are always preceded by the conjunction jon, which, in this position, also refers to the following main clause and not to any prior statement:

- Even if you gave me the weight of the desert's sand in gold, I would not go a single step in that direction.
  (Raih. mul. 73, 10)

or it may also be used as a parenthetical construction:

- This was the first—though unofficial—session of the conference of al-Aqir.
  (Raih. mul. 71, 6)

But his enthusiasm for his [own] ideas vexed her, though she did not know why.
  (Mah. qah. 19, 20)

Note that a simple conditional construction—with the use of the coordinate conjunctionjon—may have a concessive meaning:

§ 261 THE CONCESSIVE CLAUSE

A Concessive clauses are actually conditional constructions in which the relationship between main clause and condition has evolved from its original meaning to such a degree that it presents a completely new aspect.

In a conditional construction, the validity of the main clause is restricted, as we have seen, to the actual fulfillment of the condition: "I'll talk to him if I see him."

With concessive constructions, on the other hand, the subordinate clause does not limit the validity of the main clause but extends it even in the event of the fulfillment of the special conditions or situations stated by the subordinate clause. Compare the following examples: "I'll let him know (only) if he does not come" and "I'll let him know (even) if he does not come." The condition as stated in this category does not have to be a real one, but it is always possible to achieve a rhetorical effect by using a hypothetical event and even one contrary to fact as a means of emphasizing the validity of the statement of the main clause: "Let justice be done, though the heavens fall."

From the structural point of view, the subordinate clause is introduced by the conditional particles إن or لون with the same construction they have in conditional clauses (see the chapter immediately preceding). The concession per se, however, should follow the main clause, with which it is, in addition, usually connected by the conjunction jon, which, in this instance, has the basic meaning of "and still," "and also" (see Vol. III, p. 11ff.).
C In normal concessive constructions, as we have seen, the subordinate clause expresses a hypothetical situation and even one that is contrary to fact. Both are used as a means to stress the validity of the statement of the main clause. Very frequently, however, the subordinate clause refers to a present or to a past event whose actual occurrence has not nullified the content of the main clause. Because of this, the meaning of the construction becomes more adversative than concessive.

Structurally, the adversatives cannot be considered in any way different from the concessives, since they are introduced by the same particles that are also used, in the same way, in conditional clauses. The particles are always preceded by the conjunction "أَنْ تَمَلِّكَ رَبَّكَ إِلَى أَبِي طَالِبٍ" (The custody of Mohammed went to Abu Talib, although he was not the eldest brother. Hai. sir. 114,12)

We have not come into the world at the same moment, nor have we walked the same path, even though our origin and goal be the same. Nu'. liq. 79,1

That is not the first time we have shaken hands, although our hands have never touched before. Nu'. liq. 32,10

They were busily engaged with pre-Islamic poetry... although their creators were idolatrous unbelievers. Far. (Sy.) 17,17

In spite of that, she loved her dearly even though she had only adopted her. Mah. zuq. 31,10

He spoke with assurance, although he was actually going there for the first time. Mah. qah. 70,18

It is a general [crisis] which affects all human societies, although it varies according to the different factors and circumstances surrounding them. al-Hus. (Br.II) 3,1

That is a period that has definitely gone by even though its effects still remain. Sak. (Sy.) 13,47

The young man took part [in the conversation] as was seeming, although he wanted to leave the house as soon as possible. Mah. qah. 131,5

D In the instances in which the subordinate precedes the main clause, the latter may be introduced by particles which emphasize the adversative meaning characteristic of this construction:

Although I am neither monk nor priest, I am the Cardinal's relative. Manf. shaw. 158,5

In concessive constructions, may also be modified by the emphatic particle "أَنْ" which is prefixed to the conjunction "فَ" In this case, the main clause, when subsequent to the subordinate, is usually also introduced by the same emphatic particle, although it may instead be preceded by the conjunction "فَ" (see Vol. III, p. 360ff.).
§ 262 INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

A. In conditional constructions in which the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, the latter may undergo ellipsis of some of its parts, e.g.,

a) After a subordinate clause introduced by لَوْ, the complete main clause may be omitted; the construction, in this case, has the value of an invitation or a polite request:

لاَيَأْتِيُّ وَإِذَا دُفِّنَ: إِنِّي مَلَكُ بِيَدِي مَتَّى شَاءَ هُوَ أَمْ يَأْتِيُّ
May I direct him to my house to see my wife and children on his way?
Hak. ahl. 26, 7

b) Frequently, the main clause only introduces new elements which offer a complement to the idea expressed — although conditionally — in the subordinate. All the other elements of the main clause being omitted are easily understood or have already been mentioned in the subordinate clause. The elements presented as the main clause are introduced by فِ (see Vol. III, p. 361ff.):

لَيْتَنَّا لَمْ نُعْرِفُ الْبَحْرِ وَلَوْ
For we never had even the remotest experience of tranquility.
Jabr. (Br.) 70, 22
I felt some uneasiness on leaving her, even if only a little.
Qal. (Zy.) 21, 13

hoping that its author
would remember me again,
even if with just a few
lines. Nu'. kan. 7, 8

Are you so confident of
the fact that whoever sees
you, even if only once,
will never forget you?
Nu'. liq. 11, 2

I sought any occupation,
even if only for my daily
livelihood. Gibr. II, 164, 9

Poor is the educated man
who cannot do without
civilization, not even
for a single day.
Rain. mul. 73, 13

C Of special interest are the cases of ellipsis
in alternative conditional constructions when so con-
fronted that the second is the negative counterpart
of the first (i.e., "if A, then...", if not A, then...").
This is actually never expressed complete in all
its members, which theoretically include two conditions
with their respective main clauses.

In these cases of ellipsis, an introductory element
or a new statement may replace the original first member
of the alternative conditional construction. The second
part is introduced by the compound ﻱُذْهَبُ، still with a
meaning equivalent to the original of "if not." The
conditional nature of ﻱُذْهَبُ retains its influence on the
statement following (which was originally the main
clause) so that, consequently, it is syntactically
equivalent to any main clause in a conditional con-
struction; thus it usually takes a perfect, with or
without preterit meaning, or is otherwise usually
introduced by ﻱُذْهَبُ, following the same patterns as
the conditional constructions:

He assumed that she must
be beautiful, otherwise
she would not have at-
tracted a man like Qasim
Bey. Mah. qah. 112, 12

He certainly liked her,
otherwise why this great
interest?
Mah. zuq. 196, 20

is also frequently used following an imperative,
still retaining its equivalence to "if not" (and thus
conditional) but also having the meaning of "otherwise":

Take him away from me, [if
not] otherwise I surely
would kill him.
Nu'. liq. 110, 11

Tell me who you are; if
not, I shall leave you
to die. Gibr. III, 117, 4

Leave the stage imme-
diately..., otherwise you
know what will happen.
Manf. sha'. 38, 5

Leave me [alone], other-
wise you will disgrace me
in the eyes of the people.
Mah. zuq. 56, 6

Go away from my presence,
woman, otherwise I'll
break my stick on your
head. Tai. (Zy.) 34, 7

D In its development from these elliptical con-
structions and others with a meaning still related
to the conditional, ﻱُذْهَبُ has also become a particle
which expresses a simple opposition to a preceding
statement or situation, completely equivalent to the
English "otherwise." In such cases, not even a ten-
tative translation of "if not" is any longer possible.
The statement following ّبلا is still used according to the patterns given above for main clauses in conditional constructions and thus will be nonpreterital perfect or introduced by ِفَ.

Don't abandon me, otherwise I shall perish in the Eternal Fire.
Hak. ahl. 134,15

otherwise, what would people say about them?
Nu'`. kan. 62,11

I don't want to hear this song from you any more, otherwise I'll break all of your bones.
Manf. sha`. 40,7

§ 263 EXCEPTIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

Of all the elliptical usages derived from conditional constructions, the most important are those with an exceptive meaning.

In spite of their similarity, ّبلا as an exceptive particle is historically and structurally different from ّبلا as an equivalent to the disjunctive "otherwise," as mentioned above. In this latter case, as we have shown, it is the subordinate clause originally following ّبلا that has been omitted; hence, its peculiarities in construction and meaning. Moreover, ّبلا is either a member of an alternative conditional construction, or has been derived from one.

On the other hand, ّبلا as an exceptive particle has been derived from a simple conditional construction with a negative meaning in both the main and subordinate clauses from which the parts common to both have been omitted in the subordinate clause.

ّبلا may still be used as a negative conditional particle. In this case, it introduces a verbal sentence with inverted word order. The perfect in the clause takes its temporal aspect in accordance with the main clause, which is always a negative sentence and precedes the conditional subordinate.

燃料 إلى أن لم يعمرها أحد إلا أمة ورفعت ِمن نботة
Hal. sir. 299,18

After a negative statement, the use of another one subordinated by the conditional particle ّبلا may be understood to imply that the events of the first will not occur "if not" accompanied by the second:

لا أقبل فيه شيئا إلا فعلت
I will not say a word in it without [at the same time] turning it into fact. (Of course not: I will not say anything if I did not do it, or: unless I did it.)
Manf. sha`. 56,5

فلم يكن هذا الشيخ يستعرض أن يحبس ما في سبيل إلا فسر
This sheikh could not attend a reunion without bragging of his brother.
Hus. ayy. I,80,12

أنا لم أكن إلا حسب إلى الناس
He never spoke without people's thinking that....
Ref. wah. I,114,18

The use of ّبلا as an exceptive particle is derived from conditional constructions in which the subordinate conditional clause would simply be a repetition of the main clause with some new elements added and in which all parts common to both the main and subordinate clauses, have been omitted. (See the first example mentioned after the introduction above.)

According to the different forms in which this ellipsis of common parts appears in either or both members of the exception, exceptive constructions may be divided into three main groups. All three, however, are not in equally frequent use.

A ّبلا as an exceptive particle primarily introduces a noun that represents an exception to another
noun of a more general meaning already mentioned in the preceding negative sentence.

The grammatical case of the noun following ِلا is, in this construction, the same as the noun in the sentence which the exception modifies:

There is no one in the village who knew him but me. Nu'. kan. 10,1
I have no other property on earth than this narrow, dry patch of land. Qud. (Br.) 54,24
I expect only this. Hak. sul. 49,1
Of the stories I used to tell you as a child, only a few interest you now. Qal. (Zy.) 21,18

B The first member of the exceptive construction may also introduce a noun that, structurally, belongs to the second member—in this case a complete sentence in which the noun is represented in its proper function and case by a personal pronoun:

There is no village that does not have a beautiful location, nor is there a beautiful location without a village on it. Sak. (Zy.) 13,4

C The most common construction is that in which ِلا introduces a part which is a necessary component of the sentence. The noun introduced by ِلا then

assumes the case required by its function within the sentence.

a) Thus the noun following ِلا may be

1) in the nominative case

(a) as subject of a verbal sentence:

Only God knows where she went. Manf. mag. 248,5
that only death would separate us. Manf. mag. 157,3
Almost no one complains about marriage except married men. Mah. zuq. 28,8
It is shortly before seven o'clock. Manf. sha'. 83,4
Of all the languages originally declined, there are only three extant. Djiz. tar. 1,51,6

(b) as subject or predicate of a nominal sentence.

in which, other than the neighbors, this man and these two Persians who lived. Hus. ayy. II,44,19
A monkey must only obey. Sib. (Br.) 112,28

34. According to Arab grammarians and also to Western scholars (see, e.g., Wright, II, 336 B and Reck., Arab. Synt., p. 503), the accusative case is also found following the particle, but not as frequently. In unvocalized texts it is not possible to ascertain in most of the instances the case intended.
You have only to change.  
Mah. qah. 109,12

I am only water.  
Hak. shah. 149,5

for these stars are planets 
exactly like the Earth.  
Hai. sir. 131,5

(o) after "لا" of general denial.

The exceptive particle may then introduce a noun in the nominative as an exception to the general denial of existence; cf. "لا إلا الله".  
"There is no god but Allah":  
لا شيء إلا الدّين والطّور والطّير  
Raf. wah. I,15,11

(3) in the accusative case

(a) as object of the verb in the sentence:
ما كنت بحب إلا نفسك  
Manf. (zy.) 30,33

المرأة التي (و) بحب أن لا تتعلم إلا يقدارا تعددوا من نواب ببعض العلم تحسب رفقة  
The woman who] is allowed to learn only a certain amount of the principles of some sciences is considered [to be] a slave.  
Q. Amin (zy.) 5,27

Note in the following the use of a pronominal relative clause in the function of an accusative case (see Vol. III, p. 18):
من الناس من لا يصدقون إلا  
Hai. sir. 55,18

(b) or as an adverbial determination:

There are people who believe only what intelligence determines.  
Hai. sir. 55,18

(3) may introduce a noun clause preceded by "لا" or "أنا" in place of and in the function of a
Thus he had to give in to their opinion.
Hal. sir. 291,15

With regard to al-Qasim and 'Abdallah, the only thing known about them is that they died while they were still children before Islam.
Hal. sir. 128,7

I cannot but think that it had a great part in the development of his intelligence.
Hus. ayy. I,87,13

I do think that you are the one who...
Manf. mag. 188,4

The only thing left was for them to kill him.
Hal. sir. 208,23

I believe that tonight something important will happen in this hall.
Manf. sha'. 24,5

α) may also introduce an adverbial subordinate clause instead of an adverbial determination. In such cases, the meaning of the construction will depend on the nature of the subordinate clause which precedes:

That is a word I memorized but which I only understood when I was a student in Law School.
Amin (Br.) 86,25

so that he was killed only after having been struck sixty times.
Hal. sir. 299,17

β) A secondary clause, which we have seen usually modifying a main clause, may also modify a subordinate:

Won't you visit me when this place will be empty but for a sad old age?
Gibr. II,38,8

η) The exceptive construction, which we have seen usually modifying a main clause, may also modify a subordinate:

that she had never stayed there for more than a few days of [her] vacation without longing for it to end.
Ghur. (Zy.) 31,31

But no man or boy would go into the cemetery unless carrying a lantern in his hand.
Mub. (Zy.) 22,26

I will not give her the letter unless I see a spark of hope in her face.
Manf. sha'. 92,6

We shall be able to raise them [the people] only after we have descended to their level.
Musa (Zy.) 2,36

Don't come back until I have called you.
Manf. sha'. 102,17

It cannot be written unless this Chamber is mentioned.
Kam. (Zy.) 4,2

[The relationship] between man and his country or father and son is different from that between flocks and their pasture.
Zayy. (Br.II) 156,12
a) In an exceptive construction (see Vol. III, p. 338), a nominal sentence quite often refers to a temporal circumstance. The exceptive expression is generally used to introduce a coordinated or subordinated statement preceded most often by 

\[\text{جِدَّهُ قَالَ} \] 
but also by 

\[\text{حَتَّى} \] 
This statement, though syntactically subordinate, logically represents the main idea of the construction (see examples in the paragraphs following).

The subject of the nominal sentence—in the first member subsequent to the negative adverb—is a personal pronoun in gender agreement with the predicate—the substantive following the exceptive particle 

\[\text{لَا} \] 
which usually is a word of temporal significance, such as "day," "moment," etc.

Just a moment later, he said.... Manf. sh'a'. 23,13

Just a short time had gone by when.... Manf. sh'a'. 108,7

Only a few days had passed when he became tired of the name "sheikh." Hus. ayy. I,38,6

In addition, the temporal-exceptive construction very frequently introduces a noun clause which functions as the predicate in the nominal sentence. The word expressing the temporal sphere is also missing. In this instance, the personal pronoun may be either

in the masculine:

\[\text{لَا هُوَ إِلَّا} \text{ أَنْ هُوَ} \text{ قَالَ} \] 
No sooner had she learned what had happened in her absence.... 'Agg. (ZY.) 15,47

\[\text{لَا هُوَ إِلَّا} \text{ أَنْ هُوَ} \text{ نَفَّذَ} \] 
No sooner had I arrived at a safe place then I gathered my men and.... Manf. sh'a'. 214,1

or in the feminine:

\[\text{لَا هُوَ إِلَّا} \text{ أَنْ هُوَ} \text{ قَالَ} \] 
A moment later.... Idr. (BR.) 79,10

\[\text{إِنْ هُوَ إِلَّا} \text{ بَعْضُهَا قَوْمٌ} \] 
It was only a few piasters. Maz. (BR.) 10,15

It is also used to emphasize the negative meaning of 

\[\text{لَا} \] 
in the negation of verbal sentences:

\[\text{لَا} \text{ نَبِعْنَا} \text{ أَبَا} \text{ حَتَّى} \text{ أَصَرَّنا} \] 
We had hardly reached the door when we saw Baha sitting on her bed. Nu'. lig. 110,17
No sooner did his son, Husain, enter the store and lay his hand on the case then his father jumped up from where he was sitting near the threshold.
Nu’. (ZY.) 33,20

He had hardly started to climb down when the gardener saw him.
Qal. (ZY.) 21,35

I had barely finished that...when I heard....
Hak. yaum. 40,7

al-Aswad had hardly fallen when ‘Uthba ibn Rabia went out. Hai. sir. 263,11

\(\text{\textit{ali}}\) as we have seen, is generally used in the construction following a negation; however, it may also be found...

\(\text{\textit{ali}}\) after verbs or nouns that have a meaning in some way related to a negation:

However, they insisted on coming out.
Hai. sir. 291,15

He does not want me to live destitute, and I refuse to use my wealth, which......
Manf. mag. 82,16

For no other reason than......
Hai. sir. 313,13

That is impossible, unless your words could wipe out my ugliness.
Manf. sha’. 281,4

What is life...but a continuous risk?
Nu’. lig. 62,3

What else is politics!
Hak. sul. 40,13

What is that but [just] a name? Mah. gah. 111,20

Is there any reason for this except that he is a damn fool?
Hak. ahl. 77,16

I am just a beautiful body!
Hak. sheh. 50,4

\(\text{\textit{ali}}\) is also often used following affirmative sentences and after those in which the conditional meaning of “if not” is completely excluded. In such constructions, \(\text{\textit{ali}}\) functions as a particle introducing an adverbial modification; thus it is followed by a noun in the accusative case and has a meaning equivalent to the English “except”:

All of them were Arabs, with one exception.
Djir. tar. 1,101,25

All of them refrained from buying, except the boy’s brother.
Hus. ayy. II, 89,13

Everyone stood up to dance, except Ismayl and Mahjub, who did not know how.
Mah. gah. 186,22

Almost the entire night had passed.
Manf. mag. 9,7
The apartment and what it contains belong to you, to both of you, with the exception of a small closet in the bedroom.
Mah. qah. 129,9

He found the room almost dark, with the only exception of a faint light coming from the balcony.
Mah. qah. 134,15

At that time, the loges were reserved for women, except only one near the stage in which the Cardinal sat. Manf. sha'. 21,13

In modifying numerals, especially may have a meaning equivalent to "less":

For one thousand three hundred and fifty years....
Hai. sir. 1,4

However, when the noun following ّلا is a personal pronoun, it is in the nominative case:

Everything follows the course of development and progress but us.
Sib. (Br.) 113,3

Everything has changed except us.
Sib. (Br.) 113,5

Note the following:

It is nature with its omnipotence, its tyranny, and its obduracy. When everyone is at ease, it says to the lover: except you! When everyone is endowed with reason, it says about the lover: except this.... When all wounds of life are being healed, it says: except the wound of love.... When everyone changes continually, but it says about the beloved one: except him.... Raf. wah. I, 111,3

When ّلا introduces a noun clause, preceded by ّلا, which is structurally independent from the preceding sentence, it has an adversative meaning: "but," "yet." The sentence preceding it in this construction is usually an affirmative statement:

He was a youth of handsome appearance..., but he was closer to simplicity than to brightness.
Manf. sha'. 13,5

I began to fear a bitter scene between him and his sister, but he did not say a single word.
Nu'. liq. 49,3

They fell in love with him, but each kept her love and secret.
Nu'. liq. 59,8

After this, they remained silent a while without speaking, but in [their] faces was a language that only eyes could read.
Manf. mag. 30,4
§ 264 THE INDEFINITE-CONDITIONAL CLAUSE

A. In Arabic, as in other languages, sentences introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb may become very closely related to some conditional constructions. The specific function of the indefinite-conditional clause is that of presenting an event or its circumstances, which, with an indefinite or repeated fulfillment, also gives to the statement expressed by the main clause an indefinite or repeated validity.

Structurally, they are very close to conditional constructions. When the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, it has the same influence upon it as the subordinate conditional does on its main clause. That is to say, the subordinate indefinite is a verbal sentence with the verb in the perfect or the jussive, usually nonpreterit. The main clause has the same parallelism of verbal tenses and meaning—perfect or jussive, nonpreterit—as we have seen in other conditional constructions (see Vol. III, p. 311f.).

In addition, with indefinite constructions, the influence of the subordinate on the main clause may be nullified by using the conjunction ٌ (see Vol. III, p. 360ff.).

It will be of interest to point out that the use of the jussive, which is no longer common in conditional constructions (see Vol. III, p. 314), is very frequently found in indefinite clauses.

The main difference between such constructions and the relative ones consists in the structural changes undergone by both main and subordinate clauses in the indefinite construction. These changes are based on the fact that the indefinite-conditional clauses have become, although subordinate, structurally independent from the main clause, while the pronoun or adverbial relative sentence is still a necessary component of the main clause.

The two differences are: parallelism of tenses (with nonpreterit meaning); use of the jussive in either subordinate or main clause, or both; use of ٌ to introduce the main clause.

That, however, still leaves cases (perfect in both clauses with preterit meaning) which will be undifferentiated and to which the assigning of an indefinite meaning will depend on one's interpretation of the context involved.
The particle may fulfill a nominal function — generally that of an object — within the clause "(no matter) what":

No matter what is said about Ibn Sa'ud, he is, above all, a man. Rahi. mul. 58,1

No matter what the boy forgets, he never will forget the impression... 
Rusi. ayy. I, 92,8

A woman will not see any defect in her husband... however numerous they might be. Manf. mag. 134,18

They never should return, no matter what it costs. Mah. gah. 122,18

but it may also function as an adverbial "(no matter) how":

Those who keep some of their natural disposition, no matter how great or important they become.... Rahi. mul. 31,15

But Isma'il, when he wanted to play or be mischievous, would be stopped by nothing, no matter how insurmountable. Qal. (2y.) 21,33

Henry the Fourth, My Lord, never would have allowed himself, no matter how great was the danger threatening him, to surrender his white plume to his enemies. Manf. shah. 214,7
They consider Muslims as only one people, no matter how diverse their races might be. 

Par. (2y.) 17,31

No matter what the historical relationship with old religions in the representation of the Christian Trinity, this is absolutely not true with Mohammed. 

Hai. sir. 8,3

Whatever the case may be, I hesitated between these two titles. 

Hus. (Br.) 94,26

is frequently used after a conditional construction or a construction with an absolute or indefinite meaning functioning as an emphatic indefinite specification:

Whoever memorizes the Koran is a sheik, regardless of his age. 

Hus. ayy. I,37,2

and that France would not give up Syria, no matter how many negotiations on the subject. 

Raith. mul. 346,6

At times, the compound equivalent to that of is used with a meaning:

No matter what happened after his return from Paris the second time, here you have the events. 

Raith. mul. 346,16

D may also be used in this indefinite-conditional construction, but only as an indefinite pronoun and, thus, not with a participle meaning (see Vol. I, § 45). The tense used in the perfect, with or without preterital significance:

No matter what the reason, I asked myself.... 

Hai. sir. 25,8

may also be followed by as a particle of emphatic indetermination, (see Vol. III, p. 207ff.)

Whatever the facts might be, this emigration was the reason for.....

Hai. sir. 78,12

Whatever it might have been, analogy...played an important role in the development of the language. 

Amin dhu. II,278,16

No matter what it was, what really attracts one's attention is the eagerness of learned men at that time. 

Amin dhu. II,318,5

Note that, "whichever," may be followed by a determinative apposition in the same case:

Whichever writer rebels against them, rebels against the throne. 

Musa adab. 42,8

And whichever writer does not rise against imperialism and despotism, and whichever writer does not feel fire burning his heart, and, I could even say, whichever writer..., he cannot be attributed any honor. 

Musa adab. 53,8
E. Adverbs are also often found with the indefinite-conditional construction, usually preceding the main clause and introducing a verbal sentence whose verb is generally in the perfect with a nonpreterital meaning:

Wherever you turn, you see wide-open spaces.
Sak. (Zy.) 13,5

surrounding the Prophet wherever he was or where-
ever he went.
Hai. sir. 428,13

And whenever the Prophet becomes a part of life or, rather, an element of its new meaning, its clarifica-
tion cannot be but beautiful as we have de-
scribed it to you.
Raf. wah. III, 22,3

Note in the following the use of وَ to express si-
multaneity (see Vol. III, p. 12f.):

أَيْنَُ ذُهِبْتُ وَذُهِبْتَ أَيْنَُ أَيْنَُ Ah where I went, they were behind me. Hak. ahl. 80,5

Wherever we might go, there are only the two of us, and our shadows and chimeras.
Hak. sheh. 151,1

(For the use of فَ preceding the main clause, see Vol. III, p. 360ff.)

F. The main clause frequently precedes the subordi-
minate clause. In those cases, with the only excep-
tion of the constructions with َّنَمُّ (see Vol. III, p. 353ff.), the constructions may be understood as an indefinite conditional one, which will thus take a perfect fol-
lowing the particle, with or without preterital meaning according to the tense of the main clause:

كَيْ بِمَعَةٍ تُوْتُ يُخَطَّلَهَا يِهْبُ كَيْمَا in his hand a club with which he struck it each time it moved.
Gibr. I,92,15

ضَرَّعُتْ لَا لَمْ يَضَرَّعَهُ بَعْضُهَا جَاثِنَةً striking him blindly, regard-
less of where the blows went.
‘Aww. (Br.) 18,16

[They were] changing sub-
jects as they wished.
Mah. gah. 51,2

كَانَ مِنَ السَّدَادِ يُفْلِكُونَ مِنْ مَجْعُولٍ killing and shedding blood
Gibr. I,133,1

وَهَدَّى أَيْنَُ أَيْنَُ أَيْنَُ أَيْنَُ wherever they halt?

I have a nervous tempera-
ment; I cannot curb my anger when it is aroused.
Din (Br.) 58,20

G. Contrary to indefinite relatives, indefinite adverbs may take the tense of the verb in the subordi-
nate clause in the imperfect indicative:

They can drag me wherever you go. Hak. sul. 52,8
§ 265 NULLIFICATION OF A SUBORDINATE'S INFLUENCE ON ITS MAIN CLAUSE

As we have seen in the pertinent chapters, in some conditional constructions — especially those introduced by في and also others related in meaning (e.g., temporal-conditional with إن and indefinitely-conditional) — the subordinate, when preceding its main clause, has a definite influence on it.

Under this influence, the main clause takes the verb in the perfect or the jussive (or the jussive after في in negative constructions) with or without preterital meaning.

This parallelism is not often broken, and even then only with a very few structural patterns, e.g., when there is an imperfect in the clause; when the main clause is an interrogative statement introduced by the particle أي; or when في introduces an energetic.

Otherwise, whenever the main clause is to take a structural form other than that required by the parallelism we have indicated, it is most often introduced by the connective conjunction أي. In the examples below:

On other occasions, for example with the particle of emphasis, في, there is also a nullification of the influence of the subordinate. It usually acts in a different way, however; e.g., the particle, if prefixed to the imperfect of a verb, has a governing function of its own (see below).

Both particles emphasize the statement in the main clause as a consequence, in time, or as an effect of the condition, contrary to في, for example, which may be used when the construction allows simultaneity of actions:

§ 266 USE OF THE PARTICLE في

In the following paragraphs we shall try to present the most important instances in which في appears introducing the main clause.

فِي, e.g., introduces the main clause when it is a complete nominal sentence:

Whoever memorizes the Koran is a sheikh.
Hus. ayy. I, 37, 2

If I settled down in a place, everyone would flee and abandon it to me.
Hak. ahl. 80, 11

and if this book could...
I would be truly happy.
Hus. 'ala. I, 37, 14

Wherever I went, they followed me with their curious and cautious glances.
Hak. ahl. 80, 5

No matter what the case might be, it is enough for me that I have occupied her mind.
Manf. sha'. 71, 6

No matter what is said about Ibn Sa'd, he is, above all, a man.
Raih. mul. 58, 1
but if you don’t succeed, your recompense is in having performed your duty. Hak. sul. 19,3

If I have a high standing among my people, Mohammed’s position in the Korish is not lower than mine.
Hus. 'ala. II,140,5

Note the following:

No matter what it was, what really attracts attention is the eagerness of learned men during that period...
Amin dhu. II,318,5

a) an elliptical nominal or verbal sentence:

If it was not today, it will be tomorrow.
Nu'. liq. 79,5

Whenever politics fail, then war [follows].
Rain. mul. 100,18

If a part of mankind should perish little by little, it would be the city dwellers. Sak. (2y.) 13,31

b) or an inverted verbal sentence:

If that does not exist, its future will be...
Gibr. III,239,8

If love should not restore you to me in this life, then it will surely unite us in the coming life.
Gibr. II,109,1

Note that the nominal sentence, and also the verbal sentence with inverted word order, is frequently introduced by как, which emphasizes its validity:

If he should kill, he will kill us together...
Manf. sh.', 28,1

If I should feel sorry for something, it would be for my having been a city dweller. And if I should die in the city, I would die with grief in my heart.
Hak. su', 141,9

If I should feel sorry for something, it would be for my having been a city dweller. And if I should die in the city, I would die with grief in my heart.
Hak. su', 141,9

and if you succeed, I shall give you anything you want.
Hak. su', 19,2

If you want my opinion...
Hak. su', 41,2

The main clause may be introduced by как, which gives to the statement a value contrary to fact:

When she talked, it sounded as though she were yelling.
Mah. zuq. 22,5

d) when it is an interrogative sentence:

If that is literature, what, then is the difference between literary and social writing?
Musa adab. 105,15

If we do not live to learn, then what do we live for?
Hak. sheh. 75,12
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

If they did not believe in him, what could he do? Hai. sir. 138, 23

If we did not begin with ourselves, how could we be just to others? Raih. mul. 79, 2

and if it remained closed, should he stay where he was until the following morning? Mah. qah. 134, 13

Note, however, that the main clause in this position, if introduced by the interrogative particle ۸۰۱۰, is not preceded by ۸۰۱۰:

If that is true, how ignorant all men are! Nu'. lirq. 102, 13

Unlucky the wife of the one who has such a purpose in life! Manf. mag. 161, 19

but if it became known, woe unto the neglectful subordinate! Ayy. (Br.) 33, 18

If we want the truth, we must recognize...
Sa'. (Zy.) 6, 10

USE OF THE PARTICLE ۸۰۱۰

No matter what it might be, there is no doubt that the three days have passed. Hak. ahl. 38, 3

If he wanted to... it was inevitable that...
Mah. zug. 48, 9

When you have finished it, there is nothing wrong in your relaxing and playing. Hus. ayy. I, 46, 12

g) when the verb in the main clause is in the perfect tense and preceded by the particle ۸۰۱۰:

Whatever might have been the ancient history of the language, we do know it fully developed at the emergence of Islam. Djr. tar. 47, 13

Whoever tries to stand still in this transformation goes against Nature. Djr. tar. II, 6, 10

My answer is that if literature lacks honor, it lacks everything. Musa adab. 47, 15

Whatever the case may be, I hesitated between these two titles. Hus. (Br.) 94, 26

No matter what the reason is, I ask myself...
Hai. sir. 25, 8

h) or a perfect preceded by the negative adverb "۸۰۱۰" of general denial (see Vol. II, § 108):

If we want the truth, we must recognize...
Sa'. (Zy.) 6, 10
and even if I am wealthy, I never knew that wealth bears any weight in love.
Hus. 'ala. II, 140,6

i) or an imperfect preceded by the particle

إذا كنت أتقوم بجمالية
When I have finished with my class, I shall return to you.
Hus. ayy. II, 19,14

لكنه إذا ما كان يشعر
But he will know how to overcome them when he comes to face them.
Mah. qah. 112,20

j) or by the negative adverb لا:

إذا كنت لا أحسب أحد
And if I did so, I do not think I would find anyone to answer me.
Hak. ahl. 80,7

إذا كان صغيرا ولا يكون له
and if it is small, then it does not have an 'arsha.
Kah. mul. 33,22

k) or a subjunctive governed by the negative particle إن:

إن كنت أحسب أن تقول
that you, even if you implored for twenty centuries, would never win a word from me.
Hak. sheh. 61,5

وينبغي أن تقبل
And whenever the Prophet becomes a part of life or, rather, an element of its new meaning, its clarification cannot be but beautiful as we have described it to you.
Raf. wah. III, 22,3

l) or when it is introduced by the defective verb ليس:

إذا كنت أحسب الهوى
When I said the Arabs, I did not mean all of them.
Amin duh. I, 23,14

إذا كنت كيف تذكر
If you asked how he changed from that condition to this, I would not know what to answer.
Hus. ayy. I, 151,13

Wherever we go, there are only the two of us, and our shadows and chimeras.
Hak. sheh. 151,1

m) or by the particle في governing the jussive (see Vol. I, § 26):

فأنا أتقوم بجمالية
And if [the sandals] gave out on him, he would go barefooted for a week or more.
Hus. ayy. I, 39,2

لو كنت تقولينما تقولين
If you truly believed what you say, one of you would step forward to fight against me.
Hai. sir. 296,15
**§ 267 THE OMISSION OF ًّ ًّ ًّ**

There are frequent instances in which the con-
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

If I should admit to what people say..., I would be saying what did not happen.
Hai. sir. 361,3

In the morning I shall go to the priest.
Hus. 'ala. I,6,6

Although he was still twelve years of age, he already possessed a spiritual greatness.
Hai. sir. 115,11

and, by God, if he told me to cut off her head, I would do it.
Hai. sir. 449,17

If this obstinacy proves something, then it is their great desire to cast doubt on Islam.
Hai. sir. 43,5

Note that the use of 'l in the subordinate does not make necessary its employment in the main clause. The main clause may be introduced by 9 according to the patterns shown in the preceding paragraphs.

On the other hand, 'l may also be used in cases when it does not introduce the subordinate. This is especially frequent after a subordinate clause introduced by 'l: 

If he had given me the choice, I would have chosen the Egyptian home.
Mah. gah. 110,6

Had it not been for him, the titles of many a precious book would have been lost.
Djir. tar. I,8,15

USE OF THE PARTICLE 'l

If they understood the meaning of freedom, they would not oppose me in that opinion.
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,2

Were it not for the fact that I am busy, I could teach your son how to recite the Koran....
Hus. ayy. I,114,1

And if more of it had remained, he would have eaten it also.
'Aww. (Br.) 18,22

Had he lived, he would have been the best example for....
Manf. mag. 170,3
XVIII PARENTHETICAL CONSTRUCTIONS
§ 269 PARENTHETICAL CONSTRUCTIONS

The need for a more lively and less restrained style on the one hand and for a more precise expression of ideas on the other has caused the frequent insertion in Arabic of one statement within another in order to let it follow as closely as possible the part it most closely defines or modifies and also in order to give preference to ideas which are logically more important than would be indicated if they were placed in their normal position within the construction.

This insertion, which we call "parenthesis" or "a parenthetical construction," was already in use in Arabic in the Koran. In the modern language, it has become, as expected, much more flexible and common.

A parenthesis divides a sentence usually without influencing it in any manner better than the fact of the separation. In certain parenthetical constructions, however, the proximity of new syntactical elements, as well as the separation of the elements belonging to the statement, may cause some structural changes.

A parenthetical construction in the function of an accusative are very frequently used between a verb and a noun clause. They are always restrictive statements, generally, although not necessarily, of a conditional nature:

I believe, although I never sat with him nor heard him talking, that his conversation is the most courteous of that of any man.
Manf. sha': 103,10

375
For I fear if you look into my face compassion will overwhelm you.
Hai. sir. 88,13

I am afraid if I meet her alone I will become weak in her presence.
Manf. sha. 23,4

We can, after what we have mentioned in the preceding section, say that....
Amin duh. I,50,3

It was my intention, if the answer were affirmative, to....
Raith. mul. 14,18

They tried, wherever they passed by, to learn news of him.
Hai. sir. 258,5

I am afraid that if I tell you what I know about the condition of your father at that time, pity and compassion will overwhelm you and you will start crying.
Hus. ayy. I,146,14

But Mohammed, as soon as he ended his prayer, asked them....
Hai. sir. 424,1

B Also very common is the use of a circumstantial clause as a parenthetical construction following immediately after the part in the main clause it more closely defines:

So I was, when suddenly as if a stone had fallen.
Nu. ilq. 54,1

While my eyes were glued on Leonardo's violin and fingers, I suddenly felt Baha's head droop as the stalk of a flower wilts.
Nu'. ilq. 30,11

God, when He gave us hearts, renounced some of His right to us.
Hak. ahl. 25,11

While in Nejed, you will be transported back to the fifth century.
Raith. mul. 29,8

(For more examples, see Vol. II, p. 317f.)

C A parenthetical expression is not often found between the main clause and a relative specification, e.g.,

with an asyndetical relative clause:

That is a word that becomes more meaningful the more you think about it.
Raf. wah. III,8,3

or with a syntactical construction:

That life which we, when we contemplate it, find smiling during the spring....
Gibr. I,76,14

D A parenthetical construction is also frequently used between كان, in its auxiliary function, and the verb it governs. In this instance, whenever the subject of the verb كان is mentioned before the parenthesis, the verb is in agreement with it; otherwise, in cases of diversity of subjects between subordinate parenthetical and main clause, the verb may be in agreement with either of the two subjects:
E  Another frequently used type of parenthetical expression is placed between the subject and its verb when the main and the subordinate clause have the same subject. The subject may be represented by a personal pronoun when it has already been mentioned. Both — noun or personal pronoun — are often in the accusative case after the parenthesis:

If you knew him as I do, you would be filled with admiration and respect for him. Manf. sha'. 254,15

But we, if we closely examine its cause, shall find [that it is] political. Amin duh. III,6,6

If we follow the history of the Abbasid dynasty in this chapter, we will find that...
Amin duh. I,107,3

If only God, since He created me with this ugly appearance, had not given me a tender heart.
Manf. sha'. 68,1

that you, even if you implored for twenty centuries, would not win a word from me.
Hak. sheh. 61,5

They, when they study Plato's philosophy or Shakespeare's plays or the art of Raphael, do not look for invectives against the lives of these great [men].
Hai. sir. 43,14

Note that under certain circumstances the main clause following the parenthesis is introduced by the
coordinate conjunction **فَ** , leaving the noun or pronoun subject isolated—an anacoluthon—preceding the compound (see immediately below and also Vol. II, § 180):

*وَإِنَّهُمْ إِذَا كَانُواْ كَانُواْ قَائِلِينَ: أَيِّا سِيَانِ أَنْ يُعِنِّهَا بِمَآ أَنْتُمْ بِهَا?

*فَكَيْكَٰمُضِيْلُ لأَمْرِ الْكَاهِنِ الأَعْظَمِ وَيَدُُّهُ عَلَى مِلَّتِهِ.*

*Manf. sha'.' 190,5*

In the frequent cases in which the main clause and the parenthesis have different subjects, that of the parenthesis has priority and is the subject of the parenthesis itself or of a personal pronoun in agreement with it and which appears at the beginning of the construction. The actual main clause, under certain circumstances, may then be introduced by *فَ* (see Vol. III, p. 361ff.).

These cases could be considered as examples of anacoluthon:

*الْخَلُّفَاءُ الرَّمَضَانُينَ إِذَا كَانُواْ قَائِلِينَ: أَيِّا سِيَانِ أَنْ يُعِنِّهَا بِمَآ أَنْتُمْ بِهَا?

*فَكَيْكَٰمُضِيْلُ لأَمْرِ الْكَاهِنِ الأَعْظَمِ وَيَدُُّهُ عَلَى مِلَّتِهِ.*

*The Umayyad caliphs, whenever they gave presents, most often rewarded camels.*

*Amin duh. I,106,7*

*لكُمُّمُ إِذَا بَلَغُواْ كَانُواْ قَائِلِينَ: أَيِّا سِيَانِ أَنْ يُعِنِّهَا بِمَآ أَنْتُمْ بِهَا?

*فَكَيْكَٰمُضِيْلُ لأَمْرِ الْكَاهِنِ الأَعْظَمِ وَيَدُُّهُ عَلَى مِلَّتِهِ.*

*But when they reached it, Abu Sufyan's caravan had already gone by.*

*Hai. sir. 255,18*

*لكُمُّمُ إِذَا قَتَلُواْ طَالِبًا بِنَوْحِهِ وَهَيْمًا وَمَتَنْطِلُ بِنَوْحِهِا.*

*But if they should kill him, the Banu Hashim and the Banu al-Muttalib would seek revenge.*

*Hai. sir. 209,1*

Consequently, a noun anacoluthon may introduce the construction in which the parenthesis is inserted:

*The Umayyad dynasty, if it had been given to it to remain in power during the time which the Abbasids reigned [and instead of them], scientific movements and...would have appeared under them very much like it was under the Abbasids.*

*Amin duh. I,2,14*

Very often the pronoun introducing the construction will not refer to any specific part of either main or subordinate clause but will be in the masculine singular as a "pronom of general reference" (see Vol. II, § 178):

*إِنَّهُ إِذَا كَانَ سَيِّيْةٌ الْأَرْضِ يَلَهُمْ إِذَا أَتَىَ أَيْضاً وَأَلْلَهُ مَرَّةً مَّعَهُمْ أُولَٰئِكَ أَشْرَكُواْ رَيْمَانًا أَلْلَهَ أَنْ لَنْ يَنْجِعَهُمُ الْعَذَابُ مَا كَانَ إِلَّا أَنَّ مُعَلِّمًا لَّهُمْ مُكَلَّفًا بالشفاء.*

*I believe that had you not been with us, God's will and Christ's would not have granted us any miracle.*

*Hak. ahl. 37,15*

*(On the use of *إِذَا* introducing a parenthetical construction, see Vol. III, p. 16f.)*

*(On the use of a parenthetical *إِذَا* after *حَكِيَّةً* see Vol. III, p. 90f.)*
XIX EXPANDED COMPOUNDS
§ 270 EXPANDED COMPOUNDS

Midway between syntax and purely stylistic considerations are those cases which we call expanded compounds. In such constructions, an expanded sentence or a compound is further expanded by adding to the basic construction new elements, in coordination or subordination, which, in their turn, are also expanded sentences or compounds.

Modern Arabic in general has changed from its previous Semitic complicity into allowing a much greater flexibility in the language, and freedom in using such expanded constructions can now be considered characteristic of present-day literary Arabic. The excessive use of them by some authors contributes to the creation of rather long and complicated styles.

In the following paragraphs, without even attempting to pursue any analysis of the style involved, we shall present only what we consider to be the most representative forms:

She, who had previously rejected the nobles of the Koreish, wanted to marry this young man, whose glances and words penetrated to the depths of her heart.
Hair. sir. 122, 3

What was the use for someone like me to undertake an Arabic pilgrimage if I would not escape to tell about it, not even in a single book?
Rah. mul. 24, 16
When he was angry, it only showed in some drops of sweat on his forehead. Hai. sir. 124,12

But the Koreish could not do any more than that in order to avoid a civil war with the various tribes if they tried to kill any of the people of these tribes. Hai. sir. 208,8

But whenever I had to leave her for a day, I felt some uneasiness on doing so, even if only a little. Qal. (Zy.) 21,13

Since that day our friend had been a sheikh, although he was no more than nine, for he had memorized the Koran, and whoever memorizes the Koran is a sheikh regardless of his age. Hus. ayy. I,37,1

The first thing that occurred to her, as soon as she learned what had happened during her absence, was to send for Sha'rawi Pasha to let him know that Sa'ad's office would remain open for him and his associates during Sa'ad's absence as it had been while he was present, and to ask him and his associates to accept her invitation for dinner that evening and that they could hold their first meeting in place of the usual one so that not the slightest change should befall the advancement of the cause after this event which was intended to destroy it. 'Aqq. (Zy.) 15,43

Is Ibn Sa'ud perhaps one of those individuals so scarce not only in the Arab world, but even in the whole world, of those who retain some of their natural dispositions regardless of how great they become or important their affairs, of those who follow the "Straight Path" on their journey and thus learn from the Book of Life, rather than from printed books, always outstanding but never expressing superiority, hating but not double crossing, loving but not flattering, ruling but not doing evil, treating everyone justly and fearing only God? Rah. mul. 31,15

For if literature serves society, he will deal with its problems and will ask for social reform and will defend freedom of conscience and request equality between men and women and proclaim humanity among all humankind in spite of their differences in religions and sects, and if writers are aware of
the meaning of contemporary culture, which is based on scientific truths, not on traditions and customs, and if they know the expression 

"literature engages," that is to say, that which is committed to society, so that the writer feels himself responsible for his society and that he is its leader who must direct it and guide and look after its integrity and welfare, I say if Egypt's writers had linked their literature with Egyptian society, we certainly would not have fallen into the disaster in which we struggle in our time.

Musa adab. 14,8
حنان
adverbial circumstantial
accusative, II,186, 490;
adverbial clause, III,242-4.

حَنَّاء
III,153n.

دو الأحام

حَنَّاء
with a circumstantial
clause, III,279-84.

حَنَّاء
with a noun clause, III,76-7.

حَنَّاء
III,224.

حَنَّاء
III,88.

كَذَّبَ II,120-3.

حَنَّاء
III,87.

كَذَّبَ III,88.

حَنَّاء
III,89.

حَنَّاء
III,90-2.

حَنَّاء
III,92.

حَنَّاء
I,36, II,196.

حَنَّاء
I,28n.

حَنَّاء
II,227.

حَنَّاء
II,485.

حَنَّاء
III,120-3.

حَنَّاء
III,192-4.

حَنَّاء
III,223-4.

حَنَّاء
II,296-8.

حَنَّاء
II,389.

حَنَّاء
II,309.

حَنَّاء
III,346-7.

حَنَّاء
III,347.

حَنَّاء
II,257.

حَنَّاء
II,347-50.

حَنَّاء
III,145.

حَنَّاء
III,255.

حَنَّاء
III,279-84.

حَنَّاء
III,379n.

حَنَّاء
I,49; with an accusative,
الأنماط السامية بتأنيبها
II,161-2.

قلح
II,119-20.

subject of a verbal sentence, I,41-2; ordinal, II, 387-93.

الъем
II,276-82.

ب
II,318-21.

مكلا
II,235-6.

(الء)
II,238-41.

فعل
II,321-2.

ء
II,141.

ك
II,288.

كما
II,142-3.

II,430.

III,147.

II,115.

II,147-53.

II,6.

II,6, 147.

II,152.

II,151, II,137-8.

II,153, II,137-8.

ف
with subjunctive, I,79;
union of words, II,495, 497-9; conjunctive, III, 20-34; in conditional main clause, III,360-2.

ط
II,243-5.

II,338-40.

تا
II,301.

III,240.

III,236-40.

III,259.

II,478-9.

II,352-4.

III,241.


III,234-5.

ة
with correlative perfects, II,69; before imperfect, I,70-1; with before imperfect, I,71; with prefixed 

II,169.

II,169.

II,444.

II,170, 444.

II,214.

II,173n, 180.

II,172.

relative, II,467-86.

(ما)
II,478-9.

II,352-4.

III,241.


III,234-5.

I,167.

interrogative, I,156-8; exclamatory, I,158-60.

ف
II,343-4.

قل
II,142-3.

III,142-3.

قد
II,68-70.

كان
II,197.

كان
II,199; in a nominal sentence, I,36; modifying a
verb, I,71-5; with a perfect, I,71; with the jussive, I,71; impersonal subject with َكَانَ, I,49; with an anacoluthon, II,457.

كَانَ َكَانَ II,196.

خَرَّكَانَ I,36, II,196.

كَلَّا III,80.

كَلَّا بِنَى من III,80.

لَى َلَى III,205.

الذِّلَّةُ النَّافِعَةُ III,80.

لَى َلَى introducing a subordinate clause, III,80-3.

لَى َلَى III,82.

لَى َلَى III,83.

لَى َلَى I,78, III,83.

لَى َلَى negative, I,111-8; negative answer, I,167; with the jussive, I,81; in correlative constructions, I,104-5; in coordinate negatives, I,107-8.


لَى َلَى II,220.

عَلَى أَمَّكَ II,220.

مَلَأَكَانَ I,169.

مَلَأَكَانَ II,6,147.

ظَانَ ظَائِنَ II,71.

ظَائِنَ II,71.

ظَائِنَ ظَائِنَ see III,7.

ظَائِنَ ظَائِنَ introducing the object, II,88; after infinitives, II,404; after participles, II,413, in interjectional phrases, II,205; with or prefixed, I,80.

ظَائِنَ ظَائِنَ II,205.

بِنَى َبِنَى from III,205.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.

بِنَى َبِنَى II,243.
II

ENGLISH TERMS

ACCUSATIVE CASE, II,161-250;
direct object, II,163-71;
second object, II,169-70;
cognate (or absolute), II,
170, II,444-5; adverbial
accusative, II,171-2; ad-
verbial accusative or rea-
ton, II,172-3; of time, II,
173-80; correlative repeti-
tion, II,179-80; of place,
II,180-2; paronomastic, II,
182; of measure, II,183-4;
of specification (restrictive), II,
184-6; after nouns, II,185;
after numerals, II,185, 367, 368;
after elatives, II,186, 479;
circumstantial, II,186-96;
in a nominal sentence, II,
187-9; in independent pos-
tion, II,190; defined by
a genitive, II,191; position,
II,192-3; with copulative
verbs, II,196-202; of excl-
amation, II,202-20; inter-
jectional-phrases, II,203-6;
vocative, II,216-9; general
denial, II,220-6; accusative
after particles, II,227-44;
after 'j , II,213-6; adver-
bials, substantive, II,248-
50; adjectives, II,245-8;
after active participle,
II,410-4; after infinitive,
II,403-4.

ADJECTIVAL-RELATIVE CLAUSE,
III,147-70; definition, III,
147-8; asyndetical, III,
148-62; resumptive pronoun,
III,154-8; omission of re-
sumptive pronoun, III,150-60;

attraction of the antecedent, ADVERBIAL CLAUSES, III,242-311;
III,160-1; pronominal use,
circumstantial, III,242-79;
III,161-2; syntactical, III,
asyndetical, III,244-66;
162-70; resumptive pronoun,
verbs in auxiliary function,
III,255-63; word order with
pronominal use, III,165-8;
auiliary verbs, III,263-66;
syndetical, III,266-79; loc-
ADVERB: as subject in a
tical, "where," III,279-84;
nominal sentence, I,16; as
temporal, "when," III,284-
predicate, I,18-9; in appo-
308; final, III,309-11.
sition, II,47-67; attributa-
ADVERBIAL CONSTRUCTIONS, III,
tive apposition, II,48-53;
gender and number agreement,
AGREEMENT: in a nominal sen-
II,53-61; substantive use,
tence, gender, I,22-3; num-
II,61-2; apparent, II,62-4;
ber, I,23-7; of verbs with
real, II,64-7; position in
phrases as subject, I,94-5;
a genitive construction,
with a genitive phrase, II,
II,101-2; genitive construc-
153-5; within a genitive
tion of adjectives, II,105-7;
construction, II,155-7;
dependent annexation, II,
with numerals, II,384-5.
107-11; determination by a
ANACOLOTION, II,455-63; defini-
genitive, II,109-10; as ad-
tion, II,455; patterns of
verbials, II,245-8; governed
— in a simple sentence, II,
by a preposition, II,254.
455-62; "pronoun of emphasi-
ADVERBIAL: adverbial inter-
sis," II,456; with compound
rogative sentence, I,160-3;
tenses, II,452; from a sub-
adverbials, substantives,
ordinate clause, II,462 3.
II,248-50; adjectives, II,
245-9; see accusative, ad-
verbial.
ANNEXATION: "improper annexation," II,109-10; see genitive case.

ANSWERS TO A QUESTION, I,163-8; affirmative, I,163-6; negative, I,167-8.

APPOSITION: adjectives in, II, 47-8, 53-61; substantives in, II,67-77; nonrestrictive (parenthetical), II,68-72; restrictive (determinative), II,72-7; agreement, II,74-7; personal pronouns in, II,77-81; appositive in the accusative case, II,80; numerals in, II,372-3.

ARTICLE, II,5-21; general remarks, II,5-10; demonstrative character, II,10; uses, II,11-21; before an adjective, II,21; with cardinal numbers, II,374-77.

CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES: see adverbial circumstantial.

COMPARISON, II,400-4; see elative.


CONSTRUCT STATE, II,92-107; see genitive, substantive.

COORDINATE CLAUSES, III,7-59; asyndetical, III,7-11;

ELATIVES, II,467-86; categories, II,468-79; as substantive, II,469; as comparative, II,480-2; as relative (comparative) attributive, II,471; as simple attributive, II,472; as superlative, II,475-6; determined by the definite article, II,472-4;

ELLIPSIS: in a nominal sentence, I, 32-4; of prepositional phrase, II,89-90; of preposition, II,261; elliptical coordinate sentence, III,54-9; of preposition in syntactical noun clauses, III,145-7; of resumptive pronoun in relative clauses, III,158-60; in pronominal relative clauses, III,182-5; incomplete conditional clauses, III,334-8.

ENERGETIC, I,82-3; in conditional constructions, III,369-71.


DATES, II,393-5.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, II,29-47; nature of, II,29; correlative construction of, II,41-3; position, II,43-5; agreement, II,46-7; position in a genitive construction, II,102.

DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, III, 48-54.

in isolated position, II,468-71; governing a genitive, II,474-7; followed by a prepositional phrase, II,478-9; uses, II,479-86; followed by a noun clause, II,482-3; by a pronominal relative, II,483; two or more — governing one noun, II,484-5.
INDEX

IMPERFECT, I, 63-7; temporal aspects, present, I, 63-4; past, I, 65-6; future, I, 66-7.
answers, affirmative, I, 163-6; negative, I, 167; see indirect questions.

INTERJECTIONAL PHRASES, II, 203-6.

INDETERMINATION: of nouns, II, 5-10; nunciation, II, 7; uses, II, 21-9; semantic indeterminacy, II, 21-4; grammatical indeterminacy, II, 24-9.

JUSSIVE, I, 80-2; after particles, I, 127-31; after imperatives, III, 10; after ج, III, 29; in conditional clauses, III, 311-5; in indefinite conditional, III, 353-60.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS, III, 97-104; correlative, III, 101; alternative, III, 101, 103-4; introduced by ج, III, 101-2.

LOGICAL SUBJECT: see anacolouthon.

INFINITIVE, II, 401-5; subject in a nominal sentence, I, 15; predicate in a nominal sentence, I, 18; subject of a verbal sentence, I, 46; governing a genitive, II, 401-2; governing an accusative, II, 403-4; object introduced by ج, II, 404.

MERISMUS, II, 502-3.

NEGATIVE PARTICLES, I, 101-32; in a nominal sentence, I, 102; in a verbal sentence, I, 104; correlative, I, 104-6; coordinate, I, 106-8; emphasis, I, 131-2.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES, I, 135-68; questions about the validity of a statement, I, 136-41; concerning a fact, I, 142-60; adverbial, I, 160-3; NOMINAL SENTENCE, I, 5-37.

definition, I, 2; with a single member, I, 5-9; with two members, I, 9-34; categories of meaning, I, 10-2; temporal aspects, I, 13-4; subject, I, 15-7; predicate, I, 18-21; agreement, I, 22-7; in gender, I, 22-3; in number, I, 23-7; word order, I, 27-32; inverted, I, 28-31; normal, I, 31-2; ellipsis in, I, 32-4; with three members, I, 34-7; "pronoun of separation," I, 34-6; with verb "to be," I, 36; with verb "not to be," I, 36; negation, I, 102.

NOUNS: determination of, II, 5-10; indetermination of, II, 5-10; uses of the indetermination, II, 21-9.

NOUN CLAUSES, III, 64-147; asyndetical, III, 64-104; after noun in construct state, III, 74-7; after preposition, III, 77-97; after ج, III, 78-80; after خ, III, 80-4; after ه, III, 84-97; indirect questions, III, 97-104; syntatical, III, 105-47; functional, III, 130-8; after preposition, III, 138-45; temporal, III, 142-3; adversative, III, 140-3; comparative, III, 143-4; other prepositional compounds, III, 144-5; ellipsis of the preposition, III, 145-7.

NUMERALS, II, 361-98; cardinal numbers, II, 361-87; one, II, 361-64; nunciation, II, 362-3; in reciprocal correlative, II, 364; two, II, 365; three, II, 366; followed by a genitive plural, II, 366; polarity agreement, II, 366; eleven-teen, II, 367; followed by accusative of specification, II, 367; twenty through ninety-nine, II, 367-8; followed by accusative of specification, II, 368; one hundred, II, 368-9; two hundred, II, 369; three hundred through nine hundred, II, 369; one thousand, II, 370; two thousand, II, 370-1; one million, II, 371; hundreds,
thousands, millions, II, 371-2; as adjectives, II, 372-3; agreement, II, 372; prepositional construction, II, 373-4; defined cardinal numbers, II, 374-7; compound numbers, II, 377-9; approximate numbers, II, 379-81; between eleven and nineteen, II, 381; from twenty on, II, 381; fractions, II, 382-4; one half, II, 382; one third through one tenth, II, 383; agreement, II, 384-5; omission of the numbered noun, II, 385-7; ordinal numbers, II, 387-95; first, II, 389-91; second through tenth, II, 391-2; eleventh through nineteenth, II, 392; twentieth, thirtieth, etc., II, 392; twenty-first, thirty-second, etc., II, 393; dates, II, 393-5; time of day, II, 395-6; book references, II, 396-8.

NOMINATION, II, 7-8; for cardinal number one, II, 362-3.

PARENTHECTICAL CONSTRUCTIONS, III, 375-81.

PAROXOMASIA, II, 439-52; definition, II, 439; in nominal sentence, II, 440-1; expression of indefinite subject in verbal sentences, II, 441; between subject and verb, II, 441; between verb and object, II, 442-4; expression of indefinite object, II, 442-4; "absolute" accusative, II, 444-5; relative sentence after paronomastic accusative, II, 447; after verbal nouns, II, 448; between subject and object, II, 449; between substantive and adjective, II, 449-50; in a genitive construction, II, 450; paronomastic repetition of a substantive, II, 451-2; in pronominal relative clauses, III, 209-10.

PASSIVE VOICE, I, 52-8; prepositional phrase as subject, I, 53; indefinite constructions, I, 55; passive participles, see particles passive.


PREPOSITIONS, II, 253-358; nominal character, II, 253-4; general remarks on the use of, II, 254-62; with two substantives, II, 256; correlative compounds, II, 258-9; prepositional compounds, II, 559-60; omission of, II, 261; prepositional construction of numerals, II, 373-74; asyndetical noun clauses after, III, 77-99; syndetical noun clauses after, III, 138-45; ellipsis, III, 145-7; see prepositional phrase.
INDEX

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES, II, 81-90; subject of a nominal sentence, I, 15; predicate, I, 20; subject of a verbal sentence, I, 47; restrictive, II, 81; nonrestrictive (parenthetical), II, 81-2; determination by, II, 82-3; position of, II, 84-6; use, II, 86-9; adverbial, II, 86; omission of, II, 89-90; as paraphrasis of a genitive construction, II, 100.

PROPER NAMES: undeclined, II, 27.

RECIPROCAL EXPRESSIONS, II, 137.


REFLEXIVE EXPRESSIONS, II, 140, 424.

RELATIVE CLAUSES: see adjectival relative and pronoun relative clauses.

SENTENCE: simple, I, 2; expanded, II, 2; compound, III, 2-3; negative, I, 101-32; interrogative, I, 135-68; expanded compounds, III, 385-8; see nominal sentence and verbal sentence.


SUBORDINATE CLAUSES, III, 63-371.

TIME OF DAY, II, 395-6.

VERB, I, 41-97; subject, I, 45-50; passive voice, I, 52-6; agent, I, 52; intransitive verb, I, 55; tenses, I, 58-67; perfect, I, 59-63; imperfect, I, 63-7; modal and temporal categories, I, 67-7; particle ٌ, I, 67-71; verb كَذَّبَ, I, 71-5; particles ٌ and ٌ, I, 75-7; moods, I, 77-83; subjunctive, I, 78-60; jussive, I, 80-2; energetic, I, 82-3; cooptative verb, I, 196-7; verb of existence, II, 197-8; verbal copula, II, 198-202; in a nominal sentence, I, 36-7; verbs in auxiliary function, III, 255-63; word order with auxiliary verbs, III, 263-6; agreement of verb with subject, see verbal sentence.

VERBAL SENTENCE, I, 41-97; definition, I, 2, 41; structure, I, 41-5; word order, I, 42; inverted, I, 42-5; subject, I, 45-8; impersonal subject, I, 48-50; indefinite subject, I, 50-2; paronomastic, I, 51-2; agreement, I, 83-97; normal word order, gender, I, 84-7; number, I, 83-4; inverted word order, gender, I, 87; number, I, 87-94; phrases as subject, I, 94-6; multiple subject, I, 96-7; negation of the verbal sentence, I, 102-4.

VOCATIVE, II, 216-9; in the nominative after ٌ, II, 217-8; after ٌ, II, 219; in the accusative after ٌ, II, 218; ٌ with personal titles, II, 219.

WORD UNION, II,489-503; synchronetical, II,495-503; with conjunctive particles, II, 496-9; alternate or excluding meaning, II,499-501; disjunctive, II,500-2; negative disjunction, II,501-2.